# Lectures on Quantum Computation, Quantum Error Correcting Codes and Information Theory 

by
K. R. Parthasarathy

Indian Statistical Institute (Delhi Centre)

Notes by
Amitava Bhattacharya
Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, Mumbai

## Preface

These notes were prepared by Amitava Bhattacharya on a course of lectures I gave at the Tata Institute of Fundamental Research (Mumbai) in the months of April 2001 and February 2002. I am grateful to my colleagues at the TIFR, in general, and Professor Parimala Raman in particular, for providing me a receptive and enthusiastic audience and showering on me their warm hospitality. I thank Professor Jaikumar for his valuable criticism and insight and several fruitful conversations in enhancing my understanding of the subject. Finally, I express my warm appreciation of the tremendous effort put in by Amitava Bhattacharya for the preparation of these notes and their $\mathrm{EA}_{\mathrm{E}} \mathrm{X}$ files.

Financial support from the Indian National Science Academy (in the form of C. V. Raman Professorship), TIFR (Mumbai) and Indian Statistical Institute (Delhi Centre) is gratefully acknowledged.
K. R. Parthasarathy

Delhi
June 2001

## Contents

1 Quantum Probability ..... 1
1.1 Classical Versus Quantum Probability Theory ..... 1
1.2 Three Distinguishing Features ..... 7
1.3 Measurements: von Neumann's Collapse Postulate ..... 9
1.4 Dirac Notation ..... 10
1.4.1 Qubits ..... 10
2 Quantum Gates and Circuits ..... 11
2.1 Gates in $n$-qubit Hilbert Spaces ..... 11
2.2 Quantum Gates ..... 13
2.2.1 One qubit gates ..... 13
2.2.2 Two qubit gates ..... 14
2.2.3 Three qubit gates ..... 16
2.2.4 Basic rotations ..... 17
2.3 Some Simple Circuits ..... 19
2.3.1 Quantum teleportation ..... 19
2.3.2 Superdense coding: quantum communication through EPR pairs ..... 21
2.3.3 A generalization of "communication through EPR states" ..... 22
2.3.4 Deutsche algorithm ..... 24
2.3.5 Arithmetical operations on a quantum computer ..... 25
3 Universal Quantum Gates ..... 29
3.1 CNOT and Single Qubit Gates are Universal ..... 29
3.2 Appendix ..... 35
4 The Fourier Transform and an Application ..... 41
4.1 Quantum Fourier Transform ..... 41
4.2 Phase Estimation ..... 44
4.3 Analysis of the Phase Estimation Circuit ..... 45
5 Order Finding ..... 49
5.1 The Order Finding Algorithm ..... 49
Appendix 1: Classical reversible computation ..... 52
Appendix 2: Efficient implementation of controlled $U^{2 j}$ operation ..... 54
Appendix 3: Continued fraction algorithm ..... 55
Appendix 4: Estimating $\frac{\varphi(r)}{r}$ ..... 58
6 Shor's Algorithm ..... 61
6.1 Factoring to Order Finding ..... 61
7 Quantum Error Correcting Codes ..... 67
7.1 Knill Laflamme Theorem ..... 67
7.2 Some Definitions ..... 75
7.2.1 Invariants ..... 75
7.2.2 What is a $t$-error correcting quantum code? ..... 76
7.2.3 A good basis for $\mathcal{E}_{t}$ ..... 77
7.3 Examples ..... 78
7.3.1 A generalized Shor code ..... 78
7.3.2 Specialization to $A=\{0,1\}, m=3, n=3$ ..... 79
7.3.3 Laflamme code ..... 80
7.3.4 Hadamard-Steane quantum code ..... 81
7.3.5 Codes based on Bush matrices ..... 83
7.3.6 Quantum codes from BCH codes ..... 85
8 Classical Information Theory ..... 87
8.1 Entropy as information ..... 87
8.1.1 What is information? ..... 87
8.2 A Theorem of Shannon ..... 90
8.3 Stationary Source ..... 93
9 Quantum Information Theory ..... 97
9.1 von Neumann Entropy ..... 97
9.2 Properties of von Neumann Entropy ..... 97
Bibliography ..... 127

## Lecture 1

## Quantum Probability

In the Mathematical Congress held at Berlin, Peter Shor presented a new algorithm for factoring numbers on a quantum computer. In this series of lectures, we shall study the areas of quantum computation (including Shor's algorithm), quantum error correcting codes and quantum information theory.

### 1.1 Classical Versus Quantum Probability Theory

We begin by comparing classical probability and quantum probability. In classical probability theory (since Kolmogorov's 1933 monograph [11]), we have a sample space, a set of events, a set of random variables, and distributions. In quantum probability (as formulated in von Neumann's 1932 book [14]), we have a state space (which is a Hilbert space) instead of a sample space; events, random variables and distributions are then represented as operators on this space. We now recall the definitions of these notions in classical probability and formally define the analogous concepts in quantum probability. In our discussion we will be concerned only with finite classical probability spaces, and their quantum analogues-finite dimensional Hilbert spaces.

| Spaces |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | ---: | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{1 . 1}$ The sample space | $\mathbf{1 . 2}$ The state space $H$ : It |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\Omega:$ This is a finite set, say | is a complex Hilbert space of di- |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\{1,2, \ldots, n\}$. |  | mension $n$. |  |  |  |  |  |  |


| Events |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1.3 The set of events $\mathcal{F}_{\Omega}$ : This is the set of all subsets of $\Omega$. $\mathcal{F}_{\Omega}$ is a Boolean algebra with the union ( $\cup$ ) operation for 'or' and the intersection $(\cap)$ operation for 'and'. In particular, we have $E \cap\left(F_{1} \cup F_{2}\right)=\left(E \cap F_{1}\right) \cup\left(E \cap F_{2}\right)$ | 1.4 The set of events $\mathcal{P}(H)$ : <br> This is the set of all orthogonal projections in $\mathcal{H}$. An element $E \in \mathcal{P}(H)$ is called an event. Here, instead of ' $U$ ' we have the max $(V)$ operation, and instead of ' $\cap$ ' the $\min (\wedge)$ operation. Note, however, that $E \wedge$ $\left(F_{1} \vee F_{2}\right)$ is not always equal to $\left(E \wedge F_{1}\right) \vee\left(E \wedge F_{2}\right)$. (They are equal if $E, F_{1}, F_{2}$ commute with each other). |


| Random variables and observables |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1.5 The set of random variables $\mathcal{B}_{\Omega}$ : This is the set of all complex valued functions on $\Omega$. The elements of $\mathcal{B}_{\Omega}$ are called random variables. $\mathcal{B}_{\Omega}$ is an Abelian $C^{*}$-algebra under the operations $\begin{aligned} (\alpha f)(\omega) & =\alpha f(\omega) \\ (f+g)(\omega) & =f(\omega)+g(\omega) \\ (f \cdot g)(\omega) & =f(\omega) g(\omega) \\ f^{*}(\omega) \triangleq f^{\dagger}(\omega) & =f(\bar{\omega}) \end{aligned}$ <br> Here, $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}, f, g \in \mathcal{B}_{\Omega}$, and the 'bar' stands for complex conjugation. The random variable 1 (defined by $1(\omega) \triangleq 1$ ), is the unit in this algebra. | 1.6 The set of observables $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{H})$ : This is the (non-Abelian) $C^{*}$-algebra of all operators on $\mathcal{H}$, with ' + ' and '.' defined as usual, and $X^{*}$ defined to be the adjoint of $X$. We will use $X^{\dagger}$ instead of $X^{*}$. The identity projection $I$ is the unit in this algebra. <br> We say that an observable is realvalued if $X^{\dagger}=X$, that is, if $X$ is Hermitian. For such an observable, we define $\operatorname{Sp}(X)$ to be the set of eigen values of $X$. Since $X$ is Hermitian, $\operatorname{Sp}(X) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$, and by the spectral theorem, we can write $X$ as $X=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(X)} \lambda E_{\lambda},$ |

With each event $E \in \mathcal{F}_{\Omega}$ we associate the indicator random variable $\mathbf{1}_{E}$ defined by

$$
\mathbf{1}_{E}(\omega)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } \omega \in E \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

For a random variable $f$, let
$\operatorname{Sp}(f) \triangleq f(\Omega)$. Then, $f$ can be written as the following linear combination of indicator random variables:

$$
f=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(f)} \lambda \mathbf{1}_{f^{-1}(\{\lambda\})},
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{1}_{f^{-1}(\{\lambda\})} \cdot \mathbf{1}_{f^{-1}\left(\left\{\lambda^{\prime}\right\}\right)} & =\mathbf{0} \text { for } \lambda \neq \lambda^{\prime} ; \\
\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(f)} \mathbf{1}_{f^{-1}(\{\lambda\})} & =\mathbf{1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, we have

$$
f^{r}=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(f)} \lambda^{r} \mathbf{1}_{f^{-1}(\{\lambda\})}
$$

and, in general, for a function $\varphi: \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$, we have the random variable

$$
\varphi(f)=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(f)} \varphi(\lambda) \mathbf{1}_{f^{-1}(\{\lambda\})}
$$

Later, we will be mainly interested in real-valued random variables, that is random variables $f$ with $\operatorname{Sp}(f) \subseteq \mathbb{R}\left(\right.$ or $\left.f^{\dagger}=f\right)$.
where $E_{\lambda}$ is the projection on the subspace $\{u: X u=\lambda u\}$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E_{\lambda} E_{\lambda^{\prime}}=\mathbf{0}, \lambda, \lambda^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Sp}(X), \lambda \neq \lambda^{\prime} ; \\
& \sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(X)} E_{\lambda}=I \\
& \text { Similarly, we have } \\
& \qquad X^{r}=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(X)} \lambda^{r} E_{\lambda},
\end{aligned}
$$

and in general, for a function $\varphi$ : $\mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$
\varphi(X)=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(X)} \varphi(\lambda) E_{\lambda}
$$

## Distributions and states

1.7 A distribution $p$ : This 1.8 A state $\rho$ : In quantum is a function from $\mathcal{F}_{\Omega}$ to $\mathbb{R}$, determined by $n$ real numbers $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$, satisfying:

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{i} & \geq 0 \\
\sum_{i=1}^{n} p_{i} & =1
\end{aligned}
$$

The probability of the event $E \in$ $\mathcal{F}_{\Omega}$ (under the distribution $\boldsymbol{p}$ ) is

$$
\operatorname{Pr}(E ; \boldsymbol{p}) \triangleq \sum_{i \in E} p_{i}
$$

When there is no confusion we write $\operatorname{Pr}(E)$ instead of $\operatorname{Pr}(E ; \boldsymbol{p})$. We will identify $\boldsymbol{p}$ with the sequence $\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$. The probability that a random variable $f$ takes the value $\lambda \in R$ is

$$
\operatorname{Pr}(f=\lambda) \triangleq \operatorname{Pr}\left(f^{-1}(\{\lambda\})\right)
$$

thus, a real-valued random variable $f$ has a distribution on the real line with mass $\operatorname{Pr}\left(f^{-1}(\{\lambda\})\right)$ at $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.
probability, we have a state $\rho$ instead of the distribution $\boldsymbol{p}$. A state is a non-negative definite operator on $\mathcal{H}$ with $\operatorname{Tr} \rho=1$. The probability of the event $E \in$ $\mathcal{P}(H)$ in the state $\rho$ is defined to be $\operatorname{Tr} \rho E$, and the probability that the real-valued observable $X$ takes the value $\lambda$ is
$\operatorname{Pr}(X=\lambda)= \begin{cases}\operatorname{Tr} \rho E_{\lambda} & \text { if } \lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(X) \\ 0 & \text { otherwise } .\end{cases}$
Thus, a real-valued observable $X$ has a distribution on the real line with mass $\operatorname{Tr} \rho E_{\lambda}$ at $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.

| Expectation, moments, variance |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| The expectation of a random <br> variable $f$ is | The expectation of an observable <br>  <br> $\qquad \underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{\mathbb{E}} f \triangleq \sum_{\omega \in \Omega} f(\omega) p_{\omega}$. |
|  | $X$ in the state $\rho$ is |
| The $r$-th moment of $f$ is the ex- |  |
| pectation of $f^{r}$, that is |  |$\quad$| The map $X \mapsto \mathbb{E}_{\rho} X$ has the fol- |
| :--- |
| lowing properties: |

$$
\begin{aligned}
\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{\mathbb{E}} f^{r} & =\sum_{\omega \in \Omega}(f(\omega))^{r} p_{\omega} \\
& =\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(f)} \lambda^{r} \operatorname{Pr}\left(f^{-1}(\lambda)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and the characteristic function of $f$ is the expectation of the complex-valued random variable $e^{i t f}$, that is,

$$
\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{\mathbb{E}} e^{i t f}=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(f)} e^{i t \lambda} \operatorname{Pr}\left(f^{-1}(\lambda)\right)
$$

The variance of a real-valued random variable $f$ is

$$
\operatorname{var}(f) \triangleq \underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{\mathbb{E}}(f-\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{\mathbb{E}} f)^{2} \geq 0
$$

Note that

$$
\operatorname{var}(f)=\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{\mathbb{E}} f^{2}-(\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{\mathbb{E}} f)^{2}
$$

also, $\operatorname{var}(f)=0$ if and only if all the mass in the distribution of $f$ is concentrated at $\mathbb{E}_{\boldsymbol{p}} f$.
(1) It is linear;
(2) $\mathbb{E}_{\rho} X^{\dagger} X \geq 0$, for all $X \in$ $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{H})$.
(3) $\mathbb{E}_{\rho} I=1$.

The $r$-th moment of $X$ is the expectation of $X^{r}$; if $X$ is realvalued, then using the spectral decomposition, we can write

$$
\underset{\rho}{\mathbb{E}} X^{r}=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(X)} \lambda^{r} \operatorname{Tr} \rho E_{\lambda}
$$

The characteristic function of the real-valued observable $X$ is the expectation of the observable $e^{i t X}$. The variance of a (realvalued) observable $X$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{var}(X) & \triangleq \operatorname{Tr} \rho(X-\operatorname{Tr} \rho X)^{2} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} \rho X^{2}-(\operatorname{Tr} \rho X)^{2} \\
& \geq 0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

The variance of $X$ vanishes if and only if the distribution of $X$ is concentrated at the point $\operatorname{Tr} \rho X$. This is equivalent to the property that the operator range of $\rho$ is contained in the eigensubspace of $X$ with eigenvalue $\operatorname{Tr} \rho X$.

## Extreme points

1.9 The set of distributions: The set of all probability distributions on $\Omega$ is a compact convex set (Choquet simplex) with exactly $n$ extreme points, $\delta_{j}(j=1,2, \ldots, n)$, where $\delta_{j}$ is determined by
1.10 The set of states: The set of all states in $\mathcal{H}$ is a convex set. Let $\rho$ be a state. Since $\rho$ is non-negative definite, its eigen values are non-negative reals, and we can write
$\delta_{j}(\{\omega\}) \triangleq \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } \omega=j ; \\ 0 & \text { otherwise } .\end{cases}$
If $P=\delta_{j}$, then every random variable has a degenerate distribution under $P$ : the distribution of the random variable $f$ is concentrated on the point $f(j)$.

$$
\rho=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(\rho)} \lambda E_{\lambda} ;
$$

since $\operatorname{Tr} \rho=1$, we have

$$
\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(\rho)} \lambda \times \operatorname{dim}\left(E_{\lambda}\right)=1
$$

The projection $E_{\lambda}$ can, in turn, be written as a sum of onedimensional projections:

$$
E_{\lambda}=\sum_{i=1}^{\operatorname{dim}\left(E_{\lambda}\right)} E_{\lambda, i}
$$

Then,

$$
\rho=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(\rho)} \sum_{i=1}^{\operatorname{dim}\left(E_{\lambda}\right)} \lambda E_{\lambda, i}
$$

Proposition 1.1.1 A one-dimensional projection cannot be written as a non-trivial convex combination of states.

Thus, the extreme points of the convex set of states are precisely the one-dimensional projections. Let $\rho$ be the extreme state corresponding to the one-dimensional projection on the ray $\mathbb{C} u$ (where $\|u\|=1$ ). Then, the expectation $m$ of the observable $X$ is
$m=\operatorname{Tr} u u^{\dagger} X=\operatorname{Tr} u^{\dagger} X u=\langle u, X u\rangle$,
and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{var}(X) & =\operatorname{Tr} u u^{\dagger}(X-m)^{2} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr}\|(X-m) u\|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

|  | Thus, $\operatorname{var}(X)=0$ if and only if $u$ <br> is an eigenvector of $X$. So, even <br> for this extreme state, not all ob- <br> servables have degenerate distri- <br> butions: degeneracy of the state <br> does not kill the uncertainty of <br> the observables! |
| :--- | :--- |

## The product

1.11 Product spaces: If 1.12 Product spaces: If there are two statistical systems described by classical probability spaces $\left(\Omega_{1}, \boldsymbol{p}_{1}\right)$ and $\left(\Omega_{2}, \boldsymbol{p}_{2}\right)$ respectively, then the probability space $\left(\Omega_{1} \times \Omega_{2}, \boldsymbol{p}_{1} \times \boldsymbol{p}_{2}\right)$ determined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{Pr}\left(\{(i, j)\} ; \boldsymbol{p}_{1} \times \boldsymbol{p}_{2}\right) \triangleq \\
& \quad \operatorname{Pr}\left(\{i\} ; \boldsymbol{p}_{1}\right) \operatorname{Pr}\left(\{j\} ; \boldsymbol{p}_{2}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$ $\left(\mathcal{H}_{1}, \rho_{1}\right)$ and $\left(\mathcal{H}_{2}, \rho_{2}\right)$ are two quantum systems, then the quantum system with state space $\mathcal{H}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{2}$ and state $\rho_{1} \otimes \rho_{2}$ (which is a non-negative definite operator of unit trace on $\mathcal{H}_{1} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{2}$ ) describes the two independent quantum systems as a single system.

describes the two independent systems as a single system.

## Dynamics

1.13 Reversible dynamics in $\Omega$ : This is determined by a bijective transformation $T: \Omega \rightarrow \Omega$. Then,
$f \rightsquigarrow f \circ T$ (for random variables)
$P \rightsquigarrow P \circ T^{-1}$ (for distributions)
1.14 Reversible dynamics in $\mathcal{H}$ : This is determined by a unitary operator $U: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$. Then, we have the dynamics of Heisenberg: $X \rightsquigarrow U^{\dagger} X U$ for $X \in$ $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{H})$;
Schrödinger $\rho \rightsquigarrow U \rho U^{\dagger}$ for the state $\rho$.

### 1.2 Three Distinguishing Features

We now state the first distinguishing feature.
Proposition 1.2.1 Let $E$ and $F$ be projections in $\mathcal{H}$ such that $E F \neq F E$. Then, $E \vee F \leq E+F$ is false.

Proof Suppose $E \vee F \leq E+F$. Then, $E \vee F-E \leq F$. So,

$$
F(E \vee F-E)=(E \vee F-E) F
$$

That is, $F E=E F$, a contradiction.

Corollary 1.2.2 Suppose $E$ and $F$ are projections such that $E F \neq F E$. Then, for some state $\rho$, the inequality $\operatorname{Tr} \rho(E \vee F) \leq \operatorname{Tr} \rho E+\operatorname{Tr} \rho F$ is false.

Proof By the above proposition, $E \vee F \leq E+F$ is false; that is, there exists a unit vector $u$ such that

$$
\langle u,(E \vee F) u\rangle \quad \not \leq\langle u, E u\rangle+\langle u, F u\rangle .
$$

Choose $\rho$ to be the one dimensional projection on the ray $\mathbb{C} u$. Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Tr}(E \vee F) \rho & =\langle u,(E \vee F) u\rangle \\
\operatorname{Tr} E \rho & =\langle u, E u\rangle \\
\operatorname{Tr} F \rho & =\langle u, F u\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

The second distinguishing feature is:

Proposition 1.2.3 (Heisenberg's inequality) Let $X$ and $Y$ be observables and let $\rho$ be a state in $\mathcal{H}$. Assume $\operatorname{Tr} \rho X=\operatorname{Tr} \rho Y=0$. Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{var}_{\rho}(X) \operatorname{var}_{\rho}(Y) & \geq\left(\operatorname{Tr} \rho \frac{1}{2}\{X, Y\}\right)^{2}+\left(\operatorname{Tr} \rho \frac{1}{2} i[X, Y]\right)^{2} \\
& \geq \frac{1}{4}(\operatorname{Tr} \rho i[X, Y])^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\begin{gathered}
\{X, Y\} \triangleq X Y+Y X ; \text { and } \\
{[X, Y] \triangleq X Y-Y X}
\end{gathered}
$$

Proof For $z \in \mathbb{C}$, we have

$$
\operatorname{Tr} \rho(X+z Y)^{\dagger}(X+z Y) \geq 0
$$

If $z=r e^{i \theta}$,

$$
r^{2} \operatorname{Tr} \rho Y^{2}+2 r \Re e^{-i \theta} \operatorname{Tr} \rho Y X+\operatorname{Tr} \rho X^{2} \geq 0
$$

The left hand side is a degree-two polynomial in the variable $r$. Since, it is always non-negative, it can have at most one root. Thus, for all $\theta$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\operatorname{Tr} \rho X^{2}\right)\left(\operatorname{Tr} \rho Y^{2}\right) & \geq\left(\Re e^{-i \theta} \operatorname{Tr} \rho Y X\right)^{2} \\
& \geq\left(\cos \theta \operatorname{Tr} \rho \frac{X Y+Y X}{2}+\sin \theta \operatorname{Tr} \rho i \frac{X Y-Y X}{2}\right)^{2} \\
& =(x \cos \theta+y \sin \theta)^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

where $x \triangleq \operatorname{Tr} \rho \frac{1}{2}\{X, Y\}$ and $y \triangleq \operatorname{Tr} \rho \frac{i}{2}[X, Y]$. Note that the right hand side is maximum when $\cos \theta=\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^{2}+y^{2}}}$ and $\sin \theta=\frac{y}{\sqrt{x^{2}+y^{2}}}$ and the proposition follows.

Now we state the third distinguishing feature:
Extremal states (one-dimensional projections) are called pure states. The set of all pure states in an $n$-dimensional complex Hilbert space is a manifold of dimension $2 n-2$. (The set of all extremal probability distributions on a sample space of $n$ points has cardinality $n$ ).

### 1.3 Measurements: von Neumann's Collapse Postulate

Suppose $X$ is an observable (i.e. a Hermitian operator) with spectral decomposition

$$
X=\sum_{\lambda \in \operatorname{Sp}(X)} \lambda E_{\lambda} .
$$

Then, the measurement of $X$ in the quantum state $\rho$ yields the value $\lambda$ with probability $\operatorname{Tr} \rho E_{\lambda}$. If the observed value is $\lambda$, then the state collapses to

$$
\tilde{\rho}_{\lambda}=\frac{E_{\lambda} \rho E_{\lambda}}{\operatorname{Tr} \rho E_{\lambda}} .
$$

The collapsed state $\tilde{\rho}_{\lambda}$ has its support in the subspace $E_{\lambda}(\mathcal{H})$.

### 1.4 Dirac Notation

Elements of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ are called ket vectors and denoted by $|u\rangle$. Elements of the dual space $\mathcal{H}^{*}$ are called bra vectors and denoted by $\langle u|$. The bra $\langle u|$ evaluated on the ket $|v\rangle$ is the bracket $\langle u \mid v\rangle$, the scalar product between $u, v$ as elements of $\mathcal{H}$.

The operator $|u\rangle\langle v|$ is defined by

$$
|u\rangle\langle v|(|w\rangle) \triangleq\langle v \mid w\rangle|u\rangle
$$

It is a rank one operator when $u$ and $v$ are non-zero.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Tr}|u\rangle\langle v| & =\langle v \mid u\rangle \\
(|u\rangle\langle v|)^{\dagger} & =|v\rangle\langle u| \\
\left|u_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{1}\right|\left|u_{2}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{2}\right| \cdots\left|u_{n}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{n}\right| & =\left(\left\langle v_{1} \mid u_{2}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{2} \mid u_{3}\right\rangle \cdots\left\langle v_{n-1} \mid u_{n}\right\rangle\right)\left|u_{1}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{n}\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

The scalar product $\langle u \mid v\rangle$ is anti-linear (conjugate-linear) in the first variable and linear in the second variable.

### 1.4.1 Qubits

The Hilbert space $\mathbf{h} \triangleq \mathbb{C}^{2}$, with scalar product $\left\langle\left[\begin{array}{l}a \\ b\end{array}\right],\left[\begin{array}{l}c \\ d\end{array}\right]\right\rangle=\bar{a} c+\bar{b} d$, is called a 1-qubit Hilbert space. Let

$$
|0\rangle=\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
0
\end{array}\right] \quad \text { and } \quad|1\rangle=\left[\begin{array}{l}
0 \\
1
\end{array}\right]
$$

Then,

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
a \\
b
\end{array}\right]=a|0\rangle+b|1\rangle
$$

and the ket vectors $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$ form an orthonormal basis for $\mathbf{h}$.
The Hilbert space $\mathbf{h}^{\otimes n}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes n}$ is called the $n$-qubit Hilbert space. If $x_{1} x_{2} \cdots x_{n}$ is an $n$-length word from the binary alphabet $\{0,1\}$, we let

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|x_{1} x_{2} \cdots x_{n}\right\rangle & \triangleq\left|x_{1}\right\rangle\left|x_{2}\right\rangle \cdots\left|x_{n}\right\rangle \\
& \triangleq\left|x_{1}\right\rangle \otimes\left|x_{2}\right\rangle \otimes \cdots \otimes\left|x_{n}\right\rangle \\
& \triangleq|\mathbf{x}\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\mathbf{x}=x_{1} \times 2^{n-1}+x_{2} \times 2^{n-2}+\cdots+x_{n-1} \times 2+x_{n}$ (that is, as $x_{1} x_{2} \ldots x_{n}$ varies over all $n$-length words, the integer $\mathbf{x}$ varies in the range $\left\{0,1, \ldots, 2^{n}-1\right\}$ ).

## Lecture 2

## Quantum Gates and Circuits

### 2.1 Gates in $n$-qubit Hilbert Spaces

In ordinary (classical) computers, information is passed through a classical channel. Logic gates (like AND, OR, NOT) operate on these channels. Likewise, in a quantum computer, information is passed through a quantum channel and it is operated upon by quantum gates. A quantum gate is a unitary operator $U$ in a (finite dimensional) Hilbert Space $\mathcal{H}$.

Not all the classical gates are reversible (for example if $a$ AND $b=0$, there are three possible values for the ordered pair $(a, b))$. On the contrary, all quantum gates are reversible.

If a gate $U$ acts on an $n$-qubit Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ we depict it as in Figure 2.1. If $U$ acts on a single qubit it is represented pictorially as shown in Figure 2.2.


Figure 2.1: A quantum circuit.


Figure 2.2: A gate $U$ acting on a single qubit.

If the input is $|u\rangle$ and it passes through the gate $U$, then the output is written as $U|u\rangle$.

Any unitary operator $U$ which acts on a single qubit can be written as

$$
U=e^{i \alpha}\left[\begin{array}{rr}
a & b \\
-\bar{b} & \bar{a}
\end{array}\right],
$$

where $|a|^{2}+|b|^{2}=1$ in the computational basis consisting of $|0\rangle$ and $|1\rangle$.
The action of the unitary operator $U$ on the basis states can be computed as shown below.

$$
U|0\rangle=e^{i \alpha}\left[\begin{array}{rr}
a & b \\
-\bar{b} & \bar{a}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
0
\end{array}\right]=e^{i \alpha}\{a|0\rangle-\bar{b}|1\rangle\}
$$

Similarly, $U|1\rangle=e^{i \alpha}\{b|0\rangle+\bar{a}|1\rangle\}$. By measurement on the $n$-qubit register of a quantum computer we usually mean measuring the observable

$$
X=\sum_{j=0}^{2^{n}-1} j|j\rangle\langle j|
$$

and it is indicated in circuits by the ammeter symbol, as in Figure 2.1. Since by measuring we get two quantities, namely a classical value and a (collapsed) quantum state, pictorially it is indicated by a double line, as in Figure 2.1. The output consists of a value of $X$ in the range $\left\{0,1, \ldots, 2^{n}-1\right\}$, where the probability of the event $\{X=j\}$ is $|\langle j| U| u\rangle\left.\right|^{2}$, and a collapsed basis state $|j\rangle$, where $j$ is the observed value.

As an example, let us simulate a Markov chain using a quantum circuit. Consider the circuit in Figure 2.3.


Figure 2.3: A quantum circuit to simulate a Markov Chain.

After each measurement, the observed classical parts $j_{1}, j_{2}, \ldots$ take
values in the space $\left\{0,1,2, \ldots, 2^{n}-1\right\}$ with the following properties:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Pr}\left(\left\{j_{1}\right\}\right) & \left.=\left|\left\langle j_{1}\right| U_{1}\right| v\right\rangle\left.\right|^{2} & & 0 \leq j_{1} \leq 2^{n}-1 \\
\operatorname{Pr}\left(\left\{j_{2} \mid j_{1}\right\}\right) & \left.=\left|\left\langle j_{2}\right| U_{2}\right| j_{1}\right\rangle\left.\right|^{2} & & 0 \leq j_{2} \leq 2^{n}-1 \\
& \vdots & & \vdots \\
\operatorname{Pr}\left(\left\{j_{k} \mid j_{k-1} j_{k-2}, \ldots, j_{1}\right\}\right) & \left.=\left|\left\langle j_{k}\right| U_{k}\right| j_{k-1}\right\rangle\left.\right|^{2} & & 0 \leq j_{k} \leq 2^{n}-1
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, we have simulated a classical Markov chain with state space $\left\{0,1,2, \ldots, 2^{n}-1\right\}$. The drawback here is that we need a separate unitary operator for each of the $2^{n}$ possible outcomes of the measurement.

Problem Given a doubly stochastic matrix $M$ of size $n \times n$, does there exist a unitary matrix $U$ such that, $\left|u_{i j}\right|^{2}=p_{i j}$ for all $i, j \in$ $\{0,1,2, \ldots, n\}$ ?

Existence of such a matrix will result in simplification of the quantum circuit for simulating a Markov chain.

### 2.2 Quantum Gates

### 2.2.1 One qubit gates

In classical computing, the only interesting one-bit gate is the NOT gate. In the quantum world, we have many 1-qubit gates. Some of them are given below.

1. Pauli gates: There are three such gates and they are denoted by $X, Y, Z$. The unitary matrices of $X, Y, Z$ in the computational basis are given by

$$
X=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right], Y=\left[\begin{array}{rr}
0 & -i \\
i & 0
\end{array}\right], Z=\left[\begin{array}{rr}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right]
$$

The unitary matrix $X$ is also called the not gate because $X|0\rangle=|1\rangle$ and $X|1\rangle=|0\rangle$.

These gates are called Pauli gates because the unitary matrices corresponding to these operators are the Pauli matrices $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \sigma_{3}$
of quantum mechanics. Pauli matrices are the basic spin observables taking values $\pm 1 . X, Y, Z$ are hermitian, $X^{2}=Y^{2}=Z^{2}=1$ and $X, Y, Z$ anticommute with each other i.e. $X Y+Y X=0$.
2. Hadamard gate: The unitary matrix corresponding to the Hadamard gate is $H=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\begin{array}{ll}1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1\end{array}\right]$. In this case, $H|0\rangle=\frac{|0\rangle+|1\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}$ and $H|1\rangle=$ $\frac{|0\rangle-|1\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}$. Its $n$-fold tensor product $H^{\otimes^{n}}$ is the Hadamard gate on $n$-qubits satisfying

$$
H^{\otimes^{n}}|00 \ldots 0\rangle=\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \sum_{x \in\{0,1\}^{n}}|x\rangle
$$

and more generally

$$
H^{\otimes^{n}}|x\rangle=\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \sum_{y \in\{0,1\}^{n}}(-1)^{x \cdot y}|y\rangle
$$

where $x \cdot y=x_{1} y_{1}+x_{2} y_{2}+\cdots+x_{n} y_{n}$.
3. Phase gate: The unitary matrix for this gate is $S=\left[\begin{array}{ll}1 & 0 \\ 0 & i\end{array}\right]$. This gate changes the phase of the ket vector $|1\rangle$ by $i$ so that $|1\rangle$ becomes $i|1\rangle$, and leaves the ket vector $|0\rangle$ fixed.
4. $\frac{\pi}{8}$ gate: The unitary matrix for this gate is

$$
T=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & e^{\frac{i \pi}{4}}
\end{array}\right]=e^{i \frac{\pi}{8}}\left[\begin{array}{cc}
e^{\frac{-i \pi}{8}} & 0 \\
0 & e^{\frac{i \pi}{8}}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

This gate changes the phase of $|1\rangle$ by $e^{i \frac{\pi}{4}}$.

### 2.2.2 Two qubit gates

1. Controlled NOT: This gate (Figure 2.4 ) acts as a NOT gate on the second qubit (target qubit) if the first qubit (control qubit) is in the computational basis state $|1\rangle$. So the vectors $|01\rangle$ and $|00\rangle$ are unaltered, while the vector $|10\rangle$ gets modified into $|11\rangle$ and vice versa.

The unitary matrix for this gate is

$$
T=\left[\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$



Figure 2.4: Two qubit gates. A CNOT gate and a SWAP gate.

The gate could also negate the content of the first qubit depending on the second qubit. Such a gate will have a different unitary matrix. The essential point is that a qubit can get negated depending on a control qubit. The control qubit will always be denoted by a solid dot in pictures.

## 2. Swap gate:

This gate (Figure 2.4) swaps the contents of the two qubits. Because the vectors $|00\rangle$ and $|11\rangle$ are symmetric, they are unaltered, while the vector $|01\rangle$ gets mapped to $|10\rangle$ and vice versa.

The unitary matrix for this gate is

$$
P=\left[\begin{array}{llll}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

Exercise 2.2.1 Prove that the two circuits given in Figure 2.5 are equivalent.


Figure 2.5: Swap gate as a composition of three CNOT gates.

Solution To check the equivalence of the circuits on the left hand side and right hand side we compute how the circuit on the right hand side acts on the basis state $|a, b\rangle$.
$|a, b\rangle \rightarrow|a, a \oplus b\rangle \rightarrow|a \oplus(a \oplus b), a \oplus b\rangle=|b, a \oplus b\rangle \rightarrow|b,(a \oplus b) \oplus b\rangle=|b, a\rangle$.
3. Controlled unitary: This is just like the controlled NOT, but instead of negating the target qubit, we perform the unitary transform prescribed by the matrix $U$ (only if the control qubit is in state $|1\rangle$ ). It is represented schematically as shown in the first diagram of Figure 2.6.

### 2.2.3 Three qubit gates



Figure 2.6: A controlled unitary gate, Toffoli gate and a Fredkin gate.

1. Toffoli gate: This (as in second diagram of Figure 2.6) is a double controlled NOT gate. The only computational basis vectors which get changed are $|110\rangle$ and $|111\rangle$. The corresponding unitary matrix is

$$
U=\left[\begin{array}{llllllll}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

2. Fredkin gate: This is a controlled swap gate (last diagram of Figure 2.6). The corresponding unitary matrix is

$$
U=\left[\begin{array}{llllllll}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

### 2.2.4 Basic rotations

We describe in this part, some basic rotation gates, each acting on a single qubit.

The basic rotation operators, which induce rotation by an angle $\theta$ about the $x, y$ and $z$ axis respectively, are denoted by $R_{x}(\theta), R_{y}(\theta)$ and $R_{z}(\theta)$ and they are defined by the following equations.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{x}(\theta)=\left[\begin{array}{rr}
\cos \frac{\theta}{2} & -i \sin \frac{\theta}{2} \\
-i \sin \frac{\theta}{2} & \cos \frac{\theta}{2}
\end{array}\right]=e^{-\frac{i \theta X}{2}}=\cos \frac{\theta}{2} I-i \sin \frac{\theta}{2} X \\
& R_{y}(\theta)=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \frac{\theta}{2} & -\sin \frac{\theta}{2} \\
\sin \frac{\theta}{2} & \cos \frac{\theta}{2}
\end{array}\right]=e^{-\frac{i \theta Y}{2}}=\cos \frac{\theta}{2} I-i \sin \frac{\theta}{2} Y \\
& R_{z}(\theta)=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
e^{-i \frac{\theta}{2}} & 0 \\
0 & e^{i} \frac{\theta}{2}
\end{array}\right]=e^{-\frac{i \theta Z}{2}}=\cos \frac{\theta}{2} I-i \sin \frac{\theta}{2} Z .
\end{aligned}
$$

More generally $R_{\hat{n}}(\theta)=\left(\cos \frac{\theta}{2}\right) I-\left(i \sin \frac{\theta}{2}\right)\left(\hat{n}_{x} X+\hat{n}_{y} Y+\hat{n}_{z} Z\right)$ is the matrix corresponding to rotation by an angle $\theta$ about the axis with direction cosines $\left(\hat{n}_{x}, \hat{n}_{y}, \hat{n}_{z}\right)$.

Theorem 2.2.2 (Euler) Every $2 \times 2$ unitary matrix $U$ can be expressed as

$$
U=e^{i \alpha}\left[\begin{array}{cc}
e^{-i\left(\frac{\beta+\delta}{2}\right)} \cos \frac{\gamma}{2} & -e^{-i\left(\frac{\beta-\delta}{2}\right)} \sin \frac{\gamma}{2} \\
e^{i\left(\frac{\beta-\delta}{2}\right)} \sin \frac{\gamma}{2} & e^{i\left(\frac{\beta+\delta}{2}\right)} \cos \frac{\gamma}{2}
\end{array}\right]=e^{i \alpha} R_{z}(\beta) R_{y}(\gamma) R_{z}(\delta)
$$

Corollary 2.2.3 Every $2 \times 2$ matrix $U$ can be expressed as

$$
U=e^{i \alpha} A X B X C
$$

where $A, B$ and $C$ are $2 \times 2$ unitary operators and $A B C=I$.
Proof By Theorem 2.2.2 we can write

$$
U=e^{i \alpha} R_{z}(\beta) R_{y}(\gamma) R_{z}(\delta)
$$

Set
$A=R_{z}(\beta) R_{y}\left(\frac{\gamma}{2}\right), B=R_{y}\left(-\frac{\gamma}{2}\right) R_{z}\left(-\frac{\beta+\delta}{2}\right)$ and $C=R_{z}\left(\frac{\delta-\beta}{2}\right)$.
It is easy to check that $A, B$ and $C$ satisfy the required conditions.

Corollary 2.2.4 In Figure 2.7, the circuit on the left hand side is equivalent to the circuit on the right hand side if $A X B X C=e^{-i \alpha} U$, $A B C=I$ and

$$
D=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & e^{i \alpha}
\end{array}\right]
$$



Figure 2.7: Circuit implementing the controlled-U operation for single qubit $U . \alpha, A, B$ and $C$ satisfy $U=e^{i \alpha} A X B X C, A B C=I$.

Proof The equivalence of the circuits can be verified by checking how the computational basis states evolve.

$$
\begin{aligned}
|0\rangle|u\rangle \rightarrow|0\rangle C|u\rangle & \rightarrow|0\rangle B C|u\rangle \rightarrow|0\rangle A B C|u\rangle \rightarrow D|0\rangle A B C|u\rangle=|0\rangle|u\rangle . \\
|1\rangle|u\rangle \rightarrow|1\rangle C|u\rangle & \rightarrow|1\rangle X C|u\rangle \rightarrow|1\rangle B X C|u\rangle \rightarrow|1\rangle X B X C|u\rangle \\
& \rightarrow D|1\rangle A X B X C|u\rangle=e^{i \alpha}|1\rangle e^{-i \alpha} U|u\rangle=|1\rangle U|u\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

Corollary 2.2.5 In Figure 2.8, the circuit on the left hand side is equivalent to the circuit on the right hand side if $V^{2}=U$.


Figure 2.8: Circuit for the $C^{2}(U)$ gate. $V$ is any unitary operator satisfying $V^{2}=U$. The special case $V=(1-i)(I+i X) / 2$ corresponds to the Toffoli gate.

## Proof

$$
\begin{aligned}
& |00\rangle|u\rangle \rightarrow|00\rangle|u\rangle . \\
& |01\rangle|u\rangle \rightarrow|01\rangle V|u\rangle \rightarrow|01\rangle V^{\dagger} V|u\rangle=|01\rangle I|u\rangle=|01\rangle|u\rangle . \\
& |10\rangle|u\rangle \rightarrow|11\rangle|u\rangle \rightarrow|11\rangle V^{\dagger}|u\rangle \rightarrow|10\rangle V^{\dagger}|u\rangle \rightarrow|10\rangle V V^{\dagger}|u\rangle=|10\rangle|u\rangle . \\
& |11\rangle|u\rangle \rightarrow|11\rangle V|u\rangle \rightarrow|10\rangle V|u\rangle \rightarrow|11\rangle V|u\rangle \rightarrow|11\rangle V V|u\rangle=|11\rangle U|u\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

Corollary 2.2.6 A Toffoli gate can be expressed as a composition of controlled NOT's and 1-qubit gates.

Proof Follows from the previous two corollaries.

Exercise 2.2.7 Derive and verify that the circuit on the right hand side of Figure 2.9 is a correct realization of the Toffoli gate using controlled NOT and single qubit gates.


Figure 2.9: Implementation of the Toffoli gate using Hadamard, phase, controlled NOT and $\frac{\pi}{8}$ gates.

### 2.3 Some Simple Circuits

### 2.3.1 Quantum teleportation

In quantum teleportation, Alice (sender) can send a qubit to Bob (receiver) without using a quantum communication channel. In order to achieve this, Alice and Bob together generate an EPR pair (i.e. $\frac{|00\rangle+|11\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}$ ) and share one qubit each.

Suppose Alice wants to send an unknown qubit $|\psi\rangle=\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle$. Then she cannot even measure it because she has only one copy of it. Even if Alice knows the state of the qubit $|\psi\rangle$ sending it to Bob through classical channel will not be possible at all. But by making use of the EPR pair Alice can send the qubit $|\psi\rangle$ to Bob just by sending two additional classical bits of information.


Figure 2.10: Circuit used by Alice and Bob

To accomplish the task Alice makes a circuit as shown in Figure 2.10. Alice has access to the top two qubits. So all operations Alice does involve only the top two qubits.

The initial state of the system is

$$
\left|\boldsymbol{\psi}_{\mathbf{0}}\right\rangle=|\psi\rangle \frac{|00\rangle+|11\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}[\alpha|0\rangle(|00\rangle+|11\rangle)+\beta|1\rangle(|00\rangle+|11\rangle)] .
$$

After the first CNOT gate the state of the system is

$$
\left|\boldsymbol{\psi}_{\mathbf{1}}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}[\alpha|0\rangle(|00\rangle+|11\rangle)+\beta|1\rangle(|10\rangle+|01\rangle)] .
$$

After she sends the first qubit through the Hadamard gate the state of the system is

$$
\left|\boldsymbol{\psi}_{\mathbf{2}}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{2}[\alpha(|0\rangle+|1\rangle)(|00\rangle+|11\rangle)+\beta(|0\rangle-|1\rangle)(|10\rangle+|01\rangle)] .
$$

Collecting the first two qubits the state $\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle$ can be re-written as

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\left|\boldsymbol{\psi}_{\mathbf{2}}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{2}[|00\rangle(\alpha|0\rangle+\beta|1\rangle)+|01\rangle(\alpha|1\rangle+\beta|0\rangle)+|10\rangle(\alpha|0\rangle-\beta|1\rangle)+ \\
|11\rangle(\alpha|1\rangle-\beta|0\rangle)]
\end{array}
$$

When Alice makes a measurement on the two qubits she can control, the state of Bob's qubit is completely determined by the results of Alice's measurement on her first two qubits. Hence if Alice sends the results of her measurement to Bob, he can apply appropriate gates on the qubit he can access and get the state $|\psi\rangle$. The action of Bob can be summarized as in the table below.

| Alice <br> measures | State of Bob's <br> qubit | Gates needed <br> to get $\|\psi\rangle$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 | $[\alpha\|0\rangle+\beta\|1\rangle]$ | $I$ |
| 01 | $[\alpha\|1\rangle+\beta\|0\rangle]$ | $X$ |
| 10 | $[\alpha\|0\rangle-\beta\|1\rangle]$ | $Z$ |
| 11 | $[\alpha\|1\rangle-\beta\|0\rangle]$ | $Z X$ |

Thus, the state of the first qubit $|\psi\rangle$ is transferred to the third qubit which is with Bob. The above algorithm implies that one shared EPR pair and two classical bits of communication is a resource at least equal to one qubit of quantum communication.

### 2.3.2 Superdense coding: quantum communication through EPR pairs

If Alice and Bob initially share an EPR pair, Alice can send Bob two bits of classical information by passing a single qubit as follows. Alice makes a circuit as shown in Figure 2.11.


Figure 2.11: Circuit used by Alice and Bob

Alice selects the gate $G$ according to the bits she wants to send. She selects a gate according to the table below and applies it to the qubit she possesses before transmitting it to Bob.

| Bits to <br> be sent | Gates to <br> be used | Bob <br> receives |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 | $I$ | $\frac{\|00\rangle+\|11\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}$ |
| 01 | $Z$ | $\frac{\|00\rangle-\|11\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}$ |
| 10 | $X$ | $\frac{\|10\rangle+\|01\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}$ |
| 11 | $i Y$ | $\frac{\|01\rangle-\|10\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}$ |

The four possible states that Bob can receive are the so-called Bell states or EPR pairs which constitute the Bell basis. Since the Bell states form an orthogonal basis, they can be distinguished by measuring in the appropriate basis. Hence when Bob receives the qubit sent by Alice he has both the qubits. Then he does a measurement in the Bell basis and finds out the message she wanted to send. In classical computation it is impossible to send two bits of information by just passing a single bit. So a qubit can carry more than one bit of classical information.

### 2.3.3 A generalization of "communication through EPR states"

Let $F$ be a finite abelian group of order $n$ for example $(\mathbb{Z} / 2 \mathbb{Z})^{k}$ with $n=2^{k}$. Let $\hat{F}$ denote its character group. Define the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} \triangleq L^{2}(F)$ to be the space of functions from $F$ to $\mathbb{C}$ under the standard inner product. The characteristic functions of elements of the group $F$, $1_{\{x\}}$ where $x \in F$, form the standard orthonormal basis for $\mathcal{H}$. Define $|x\rangle \triangleq 1_{\{x\}}$. Let $f \in \mathcal{H}$ and $x \in F$. For $a \in F$ and $\alpha \in \hat{F}$, define unitary operators $U_{a}$ and $V_{\alpha}$ on $\mathcal{H}$ as

$$
\left(U_{a} f\right)(x) \triangleq \triangleq f(x+a), \quad\left(V_{\alpha} f\right)(x)=\alpha(x) f(x)
$$

$U_{a}$ can be thought of as translation by the group element $a$ and $V_{\alpha}$ can be thought of as multiplication by the character $\alpha$. For $(a, \alpha) \in F \times \hat{F}$, define the Weyl operator $W_{a, \alpha} \triangleq U_{a} V_{\alpha}$. It is a unitary operator.

Exercise 2.3.1 $W_{a, \alpha} W_{b, \beta}=\overline{\alpha(b)} W_{a+b, \alpha \beta}$. i.e. the $W_{a, \alpha}$ form a projective unitary representation of the group $F \times \hat{F}$. The term projective is used to refer to the fact that the unitary operators $W_{a, \alpha}$ form a representation of $F \times \hat{F}$ upto multiplication by a complex scalar (the number $\overline{\alpha(b)})$ of modulus unity.

Exercise 2.3.2 Show that the only linear operators which commute with $W_{a, \alpha}$ for all $(a, \alpha) \in F \times \hat{F}$, are the scalars. Hence, the $W_{a, \alpha}$ 's form an irreducible projective representation of the group $F \times \hat{F}$, i.e. the only subspaces of $\mathcal{H}$ which are invariant under every $W_{a, \alpha}$ are the zero subspace and $\mathcal{H}$ itself.

Exercise 2.3.3 Show that the operators $\left\{W_{a, \alpha}\right\}_{(a, \alpha) \in F \times \hat{F}}$ are linearly independent. Thus, they span the space $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{H})$ of (bounded) linear operators on $\mathcal{H}$.

Exercise 2.3.4 Show that $W_{a, \alpha}^{\dagger}=\alpha(a) W_{-a, \bar{\alpha}}$. Show also that $\operatorname{Tr} W_{a, \alpha}=n$ if $a=0$ and $\alpha$ is the trivial character, where $n=|F|$; otherwise $\operatorname{Tr} W_{a, \alpha}=0$. Hence, prove that $\operatorname{Tr} W_{a, \alpha}^{\dagger} W_{b, \beta}=n \delta_{(a, \alpha),(b, \beta)}$.

Exercise 2.3.5 Define

$$
\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum_{x \in F}|x\rangle|x\rangle
$$

Also define $|(a, \alpha)\rangle \triangleq\left(W_{a, \alpha} \otimes I\right)\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle$, where $I$ is the identity operator on $\mathcal{H}$. Then, $\{|(a, \alpha)\rangle\}_{(a, \alpha) \in F \times \hat{F}}$ is an orthonormal basis for $\mathcal{H} \otimes \mathcal{H}$.

Enumerate $(a, \alpha)$ as $f(a, \alpha) \in\left\{1,2, \ldots, n^{2}\right\}$, in some order. Define the Hermitian measurement operator

$$
X \triangleq \sum_{(a, \alpha) \in F \times \hat{F}} f(a, \alpha)|(a, \alpha)\rangle\langle(a, \alpha)|
$$

$\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle$ is the entangled state which Alice and Bob share. Alice holds the first $\log n$ qubits of the state while Bob holds the other $\log n$ qubits. To send a message $m \in\left[n^{2}\right]$, Alice applies the unitary transformation $W_{a, \alpha}$, where $f(a, \alpha)=m$, on her qubits. She then sends her qubits to Bob, who then applies the measurement $X$ on the $2 \log n$ qubits which he now has. The outcome of the measurement is $m$, which is exactly what Alice intended to send. Thus Alice has communicated $2 \log n$ classical bits of information using only $\log n$ qubits of quantum communication.


Figure 2.12: Circuit used by Alice and Bob

Exercise 2.3.6 In the case where $F=\mathbb{Z} / 2 \mathbb{Z}$, this reduces to communicating two classical bits at a time using one qubit, by the usual superdense coding technique!

### 2.3.4 Deutsche algorithm

This algorithm enables us to find out whether a function $f:\{0,1\} \rightarrow\{0,1\}$, is a constant function or not, by computing the function only once. In classical theory of computation we must evaluate the function twice before making such a conclusion.

Corresponding to the function $f$ we consider the unitary operator $U_{f}$, where $U_{f}|x y\rangle=|x\rangle|y \oplus f(x)\rangle, x, y \in\{0,1\}$. The circuit for implementing the algorithm is shown in Figure 2.13.


Figure 2.13: Circuit for implementing Deutsche Algorithm.

We follow the evolution of the circuit in Figure 2.13.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle & =|01\rangle \\
\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle & =\frac{1}{2}(|0\rangle+|1\rangle)(|0\rangle-|1\rangle)
\end{aligned}
$$

Observe that $U_{f}|x\rangle\left(\frac{|0\rangle-|1\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}\right)=(-1)^{f(x)}|x\rangle\left(\frac{|0\rangle-|1\rangle}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\psi_{2}\right\rangle & = \begin{cases} \pm \frac{1}{2}(|0\rangle+|1\rangle)(|0\rangle-|1\rangle) & \text { if } f(0)=f(1) ; \\
\pm \frac{1}{2}(|0\rangle-|1\rangle)(|0\rangle-|1\rangle) & \text { otherwise. }\end{cases} \\
\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle & = \begin{cases} \pm|0\rangle \frac{(|0\rangle-|1\rangle)}{\sqrt{2}} & \text { if } f(0)=f(1) ; \\
\pm|1\rangle \frac{(|0\rangle-|1\rangle)}{\sqrt{2}} & \text { otherwise. }\end{cases} \\
\Longrightarrow\left|\psi_{3}\right\rangle & = \pm|f(0) \oplus f(1)\rangle \frac{(|0\rangle-|1\rangle)}{\sqrt{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, by measuring the first bit we get

$$
\left\{\{f(0) \oplus f(1)\}, \pm|f(0) \oplus f(1)\rangle \frac{(|0\rangle-|1\rangle)}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}
$$

In this algorithm, both superposition and interference of quantum states are exploited.

### 2.3.5 Arithmetical operations on a quantum computer

We now see how addition may be performed on a quantum computer. Let $x, y$ be two $n+1$ bit integers. Then we have

$$
\begin{array}{rllllll}
x & = & & a_{n} & a_{n-1} & \ldots & a_{0} \\
y & = & & b_{n} & b_{n-1} & \ldots & b_{0} \\
\hline x+y & = & c_{n} & s_{n} & s_{n-1} & \ldots & s_{0}
\end{array}
$$

and

$$
\begin{array}{rlllll}
x^{\prime}= & & a_{n-1} & a_{n-2} & \ldots & a_{0} \\
y^{\prime}= & & b_{n-1} & a_{n-2} & \ldots & b_{0} \\
\hline x^{\prime}+y^{\prime} & =c_{n-1} & s_{n-1} & s_{n-2} & \ldots & s_{0}
\end{array}
$$

Note that $s_{0}, s_{1}, \ldots s_{n-1}$ are same in both these additions. Also,

$$
\left(c_{n}, s_{n}\right)=\left(a_{n} b_{n} \oplus c_{n-1}\left(a_{n} \oplus b_{n}\right), a_{n} \oplus b_{n} \oplus c_{n-1}\right)
$$

Note that the Toffoli gate sends $|a b c\rangle \rightarrow|a b\rangle|c \oplus a b\rangle$.


Figure 2.14: Circuit for adding two single bit numbers with carry.

Consider a subroutine for adding two single bit numbers with carry. The circuit for this subroutine is shown in Figure 2.14.

If we measure the last two qubits in the circuit in Figure 2.14, we get the outputs $\left\{s_{n}\right\},\left\{c_{n}\right\}$ and the collapsed states $\left|s_{n}\right\rangle,\left|c_{n}\right\rangle$ provided $d=0$. Hence, using this subroutine we can add two $n$-bit numbers.

## Addition:

We would like to count the number of Toffoli and CNOT gates used by the circuit as a measure of complexity. Suppose $\alpha_{n}$ Toffoli and $\beta_{n}$ CNOT gates are used for adding two $n$-bit numbers. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha_{n+1} & =\alpha_{n}+2, & \beta_{n+1} & =\beta_{n}+2 \\
\Longrightarrow \alpha_{n} & =\alpha_{1}+2(n-1), & \beta_{n} & =\beta_{1}+2(n-1) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Consider the circuit in Figure 2.15.


Figure 2.15: Circuit for adding two single bit numbers without carry.
Thus, $\alpha_{1}=1$ and $\beta_{1}=1$. This implies $\alpha_{n}=\beta_{n}=2 n-1$. So by this method of adding two $n$ bit numbers we need $2 n-1$ Toffoli and
$2 n-1$ CNOT gates. The circuit for adding two $n$ bit numbers is shown in Figure 2.16.


Figure 2.16: Circuit for adding two $n$ bit numbers without carry.

## Subtraction:

To evaluate $a-b$, where $a, b$ are two $n$ bit numbers, add $a$ and $2^{n}-b$ to get $a+2^{n}-b=e_{n} e_{n-1} \ldots e_{0}$. Note that $2^{n}-b$ can be easily computed using only CNOT gates. If $e_{n}=0$, then $a-b=$ $-\left(1 \oplus e_{n-1}\right)\left(1 \oplus e_{n-2}\right) \cdots\left(1 \oplus e_{0}\right)$. If $e_{n}=1$, then $a-b=e_{n-1} e_{n-2} \cdots e_{0}$.

Exercise 2.3.7 Count the number of gates required in the above subtraction algorithm.

Exercise 2.3.8 Device a circuit for addition $(\bmod N)$, multiplication and division.

## Lecture 3

## Universal Quantum Gates

### 3.1 CNOT and Single Qubit Gates are Universal

In classical computation the AND, OR and NOT gates are universal which means that any boolean function can be realized using only these three gates. In this lecture, we prove the quantum analogue of this theorem. We show that any unitary transformation in an $n$-qubit Hilbert space can be approximated by compositions of Hadamard, CNOT, phase and $\pi / 8$ gates to any desired degree of accuracy. We proceed by proving two propositions from which the theorem immediately follows.

Lemma 3.1.1 Any $n \times n$ unitary matrix $U$ can be expressed as a product of at most one phase factor and $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ unitary matrices, each of which acts on a 2-dimensional coordinate plane.

Proof Let $U=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}u_{11} & u_{12} & \ldots & u_{1 n} \\ u_{21} & u_{22} & \ldots & u_{2 n} \\ \cdot & \cdot & \ldots & \cdot \\ u_{n 1} & u_{n 2} & \ldots & u_{n n}\end{array}\right]$.
If $u_{21}=0$, do nothing. Otherwise, left multiply by a unitary matrix

$$
U_{1}=\left[\begin{array}{cc|c}
\alpha & \beta & 0 \\
-\bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha} & \\
\hline 0 & I_{n-2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

such that $-\bar{\beta} u_{11}+\bar{\alpha} u_{21}=0$ and $|\alpha|^{2}+|\beta|^{2}=1$. Solving we get

$$
\alpha=\frac{\bar{u}_{11}}{\sqrt{\left|u_{11}\right|^{2}+\left|u_{21}\right|^{2}}} \text { and } \beta=\frac{\bar{u}_{21}}{\sqrt{\left|u_{11}\right|^{2}+\left|u_{21}\right|^{2}}} .
$$

Now consider $M^{1}=U_{1} U$. The $M^{1}(2,1)$ entry is 0 . If $M^{1}(3,1)$ is 0, we do nothing. Otherwise we left multiply by $U_{2}$ in the $(1,3)$ plane to make the entry $(3,1)$ in the resulting matrix 0 . Continuing this way we get

$$
U_{n-1} U_{n-2} \cdots U_{1} U=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
v_{11} & v_{12} & \ldots & v_{1 n} \\
0 & v_{22} & \ldots & v_{2 n} \\
. & \cdot & \ldots & \cdot \\
0 & v_{n 2} & \ldots & v_{n n}
\end{array}\right]
$$

where $\left|v_{11}\right|=1$. Orthogonality between the $1^{\text {st }}$ and any other column shows that $v_{12}=v_{13}=\cdots=v_{1 n}=0$. Thus

$$
v_{11}^{-1} U_{n-1} U_{n-2} \cdots U_{1} U=\left[\begin{array}{c|cccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
\hline 0 & & & \\
0 & & & \\
\cdot & & \mathrm{~W} & \\
\cdot & & & \\
\cdot & & &
\end{array}\right]
$$

where $W$ is an $n-1 \times n-1$ unitary matrix. The same procedure is repeated for the reduced matrix $W$. We repeat these operations till we get the identity matrix $I$. Pooling the phase factors we get $e^{i \alpha} U_{m} U_{m-1} \cdots U_{1} U=I$ where $m \leq\binom{ n}{2}$. It is to be noted that $U_{j}$ is an element in $S U(2)$ acting in a two dimensional subspace. Transferring the $U_{j}$ 's to the right we get $U=e^{i \alpha} U_{1}^{\dagger} U_{2}^{\dagger} \cdots U_{m}^{\dagger}$.

Lemma 3.1.2 Any matrix $U \in S U(2)$ acting in a 2-dimensional subspace can be realized using single qubit and r-controlled 1-qubit gates.

Proof Consider $\mathcal{H}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes n}$ with computational basis $\left\{|x\rangle, x \in\{0,1\}^{n}\right\}$. Consider a pair $x, y$ which differ in exactly one place, say $i$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
|x\rangle & =|a\rangle|0\rangle|b\rangle \\
|y\rangle & =|a\rangle|1\rangle|b\rangle,
\end{aligned}
$$

with $a$ and $b$ being words of length $i-1$ and $n-i$ respectively.
A unitary matrix $U$ in the two dimensional plane spanned by $|x\rangle$ and $|y\rangle$ which leaves the other kets $|z\rangle$ fixed can be expressed as in Figure 3.1, with $U$ replaced by $\tilde{U}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}\alpha & \beta \\ -\bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha}\end{array}\right]$ and $|\alpha|^{2}+|\beta|^{2}=1$.


Figure 3.1: $\quad A$ generalized controlled $U$ operation on $n$ qubits.


Figure 3.2: A generalized controlled NOT operation on $n$ qubits.

Suppose now $x$ and $y$ differ in $r$ places. Then we can construct a sequence

$$
x=x^{(0)}, x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \ldots, x^{(r-1)}, x^{(r)}=y
$$

of $n$ length words such that $x^{(i)}$ and $x^{(i+1)}$ differ exactly in one position for all $i=0,1,2, \ldots, r-1$.

Let $\quad x, \quad x^{(1)}$ differ at position $j_{1}$,
$x^{(1)}, \quad x^{(2)} \quad$ differ at position $j_{2}$,
$\vdots \quad \vdots \quad$ :
and $\quad x^{(r-1)}, \quad x^{(r)}$ differ at position $j_{r}$.
Now a controlled NOT gate (it is not the CNOT gate) is applied on $x$ with the $j_{1}$ bit as target and the remaining $n-1$ bits as control bits. The NOT gate acts on the $j_{1}$ bit if the first bit is $x_{1}$, the second bit is $x_{2}$ and so on. This can be implemented with $X$ (NOT) and CNOT gates as shown in the Figures 3.2 and 3.3.


Figure 3.3: Realizing a generalized controlled operation.

We follow this by a controlled NOT on $x^{(1)}$ with $j_{2}$ as the target bit and the remaining $n-1$ as the control bits. After continuing this up to $x^{(r-1)}$, we apply $\tilde{U}$. Then we just do the reverse of the controlled NOT operations. This implements $\tilde{U}$ in the plane generated by $|x\rangle$ and $|y\rangle$ keeping all $|z\rangle$ fixed where $z$ differs from both $x$ and $y$.

Figure 3.3 shows how a generalized controlled 1-qubit gate can be realized using 1-qubit gates and $r$-controlled 1-qubit gate. This completes the proof.

Lemma 3.1.3 If $n \geq 2$, then an $n$-controlled 1-qubit gate can be realized by $(n-1)$-controlled 1-qubit gates.

Proof Let $U=V^{2}$ where $U, V \in S U(2)$. Then we see that the two circuits in Figure 3.4 are equivalent.


Figure 3.4: $n$-controlled 1-qubit gate as a composition of five $(n-1)$ controlled 1-qubit gates.

Exercise 3.1.4 Show that in Figure 3.4 the circuit on the left hand side is equivalent to the circuit on the right hand side.

Lemma 3.1.5 A controlled 1-qubit gate can be realized using CNOT and single qubit gates.

Proof Let $U=e^{i \alpha} A X B X C, A B C=I, D=\left[\begin{array}{cc}1 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{i \alpha}\end{array}\right]$. Then from
Corollary 2.2 .4 we know that the two circuits in Figure 3.5 are equivalent.

Proposition 3.1.6 Any arbitary unitary matrix on an n-dimensional Hilbert space can be realized using phase, single qubit and CNOT gates.

Proof The proof follows from Lemma 3.1.1, Lemma 3.1.2, Lemma 3.1.3 and Lemma 3.1.5.


Figure 3.5: Controlled 1-qubit gate as a composition of two CNOT and four 1-qubit gates.

Proposition 3.1.7 The group generated by $H$ and $e^{-i \frac{\pi}{8} Z}$ is dense in $S U(2)$.

Proof $H^{2}=I, H Z H=X, H Y H=-Y, H e^{-i \frac{\pi}{8} Z} H=e^{-i \frac{\pi}{8} X}$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
e^{-i \frac{\pi}{8} Z} e^{-i \frac{\pi}{8} X} & =\cos ^{2} \frac{\pi}{8} I-\left(i \sin \frac{\pi}{8}\right)\left\{\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right)(X+Z)+\left(\sin \frac{\pi}{8}\right) Y\right\} \\
& =R_{\vec{n}(\alpha)}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\cos \alpha=\cos ^{2} \frac{\pi}{8}, \vec{n}=\frac{\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{8}, \sin \frac{\pi}{8}, \cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right)}{\sqrt{1+\cos ^{2} \frac{\pi}{8}}}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
H e^{-i \frac{\pi}{8} Z} e^{-i \frac{\pi}{8} X} H & =\cos ^{2} \frac{\pi}{8} I-\left(i \sin \frac{\pi}{8}\right)\left\{\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right)(X+Z)-\left(\sin \frac{\pi}{8}\right) Y\right\} \\
& =R_{\vec{m}(\alpha)}
\end{aligned}
$$

where, $\vec{m}=\frac{\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{8},-\sin \frac{\pi}{8}, \cos \frac{\pi}{8}\right)}{\sqrt{1+\cos ^{2} \frac{\pi}{8}}}$. Now we need the following lemma.
Lemma 3.1.8 If $\cos \alpha=\cos ^{2} \frac{\pi}{8}$, then $\alpha$ is an irrational multiple of $\pi$.
Proof See Appendix.

Any $R_{\vec{n}}(\theta)$ can be approximated as closely as we want by a suitable power of $R_{\vec{n}}(\alpha)$ because $\alpha$ is an irrational multiple of $\pi$. Similarly, any $R_{\vec{m}}(\phi)$ can be approximated by a suitable power of $R_{\vec{m}}(\alpha)$.

Since $\vec{n}$ and $\vec{m}$ are two linearly independent unit vectors, any $U \in$ $S U(2)$ can be written as $U=e^{i \psi} R_{\vec{n}}\left(\theta_{1}\right) R_{\vec{m}}\left(\theta_{2}\right) R_{\vec{n}}\left(\theta_{3}\right)$. This is an immediate consequence of Euler's theorem (Theorem 2.2.2). This completes the proof.

Now we are ready for the main theorem.
Theorem 3.1.9 The subgroup generated by the Hadamard gate $H$, phase gate, CNOT and the $\pi / 8$ is dense in the unitary group $U(2)$.

Proof Immediate from Proposition 3.1.6 and Proposition 3.1.7.

### 3.2 Appendix

In this section we first give all the definitions and results needed to prove Lemma 3.1.8. The proofs which are routine are left out. The reader may refer to $[3,8]$ for a comprehensive treatment. We start with a few definitions.

A nonzero ring $\mathbf{R}$ with $1 \neq 0$ is called an integral domain if it has no zero divisors. In other words, it has the property that for $A, B \in \mathbf{R}$, if $A B=0$, then $A=0$ or $B=0$.

An ideal is called principal if it is generated by a single element.
An integral domain in which every ideal is principal is called a principal ideal domain.

Exercise 3.2.1 Show that for any field $k, k[x]$ is a principal ideal domain.

An element $P(\neq\{0,1\})$ of an integral domain $\mathbf{R}$ is called prime if the following is true: if $P$ divides a product of two elements of $\mathbf{R}$, then it divides one of the factors.

A nonconstant polynomial $P \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ is called irreducible if it is written as a product of two polynomials $P_{1}, P_{2} \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ then either $P_{1}$ or $P_{2}$ is a constant.

A polynomial is called monic if the coefficient of the leading term is 1 .

A polynomial $a_{0}+a_{1} x+\cdots+a_{n} x^{n}$ in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ is called primitive if g.c.d. $\left(\left|a_{0}\right|, \ldots,\left|a_{n}\right|\right)=1$ and $a_{n}>0$.

Remark 3.2.2 Every nonzero polynomial $P \in \mathbb{Q}[x]$ can be written as a product $P=c P_{0}$, where $c$ is a rational number and $P_{0}$ is a primitive polynomial in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$. Note that this expression for $P$ is unique and the polynomial $P$ has integer coefficients if and only if $c$ is an integer. In that case $|c|$ is the g.c.d. of the coefficients of $P$ and $c$ and the leading coefficient of $P$ have the same sign.

The rational number $c$ which appears in Remark 3.2 .2 is called the content of $P$. If $P$ has integer coefficients, then the content divides $P$ in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$. Also, $P$ is primitive if and only if its content is 1 .

Lemma 3.2.3 Let $\varphi: \mathbf{R} \longrightarrow \mathbf{R}^{\prime}$ be a ring homomorphism. Then for any element $\alpha \in \mathbf{R}^{\prime}$, there is a unique homomorphism $\Phi: \mathbf{R}[x] \longrightarrow \mathbf{R}^{\prime}$ which agrees with the map $\varphi$ on constant polynomials and sends $x \rightsquigarrow \alpha$.

Let $\mathbb{F}_{p}=\mathbb{Z} / p \mathbb{Z}$. Lemma 3.2.3 gives us a homomorphism $\mathbb{Z}[x] \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_{p}$. This homomorphism sends a polynomial $P=a_{m} x^{m}+\cdots+a_{0}$ to its residue $\bar{P}=\overline{a_{m}} x^{m}+\cdots+\overline{a_{0}}$ modulo $p$.

Theorem 3.2.4 (Gauss's Lemma) A product of primitive polynomials in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ is primitive.

Proof Let $P$ and $Q$ be two primitive polynomials in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ and let $R$ be their product. Obviously the leading coefficient of $R$ is positive. To show that $R$ is primitive, it is enough to show that no prime integer $p$ divides all the coefficients of $R$. Consider the homomorphism $\mathbb{Z}[x] \longrightarrow \mathbb{F}_{p}[x]$ defined above. Since $P$ is primitive, its coefficients are not all divisible by $p$. So $\bar{P} \neq 0$. Similarly, $\bar{Q} \neq 0$. Since the polynomial ring $\mathbb{F}_{p}[x]$ is an integral domain, $\bar{R}=\bar{P} \bar{Q} \neq 0$. Therefore $p$ does not divide one of the coefficients of $R$. This implies that $R$ is primitive.

Proposition 3.2.5 1. Let $F, G$ be polynomials in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$, and let $F_{0}$, $G_{0}$ be the associated primitive polynomials in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$. If $F$ divides $G$ in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$, then $F_{0}$ divides $G_{0}$ in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$.
2. Let $F, G \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$ such that $F$ is primitive and $G$ is divisible by $F$ in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$, say $G=F Q$, with $Q \in \mathbb{Q}[x]$. Then $Q \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$, and hence $F$ divides $G$ in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$.
3. Let $F, G$ be polynomials in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$. If they have a common nonconstant factor in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$, then they have such a factor in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ too.

Proof To prove (1), we may clear denominators so that $F$ and $G$ become primitive. Then (1) is a consequence of (2). By Remark 3.2.2 we can write $Q=c Q_{0}$, where $Q_{0}$ is primitive and $c \in \mathbb{Q}$. By Gauss's Lemma, $F Q_{0}$ is primitive, and the equation $G=c F Q_{0}$ shows that it is the primitive polynomial $Q_{0}$ associated to $Q$. Therefore $Q=c Q_{0}$ is the expression for $Q$ referred to in Lemma 3.2.2, and $c$ is the content of $Q$.

Since $c$ is the content of both $G$ and $Q$, and $G \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$, it follows that $c \in \mathbb{Z}$, hence that $Q \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$. Now let us prove (3). Suppose that $F, G$ have a common factor $H$ in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$. We may assume that $H$ is primitive, and then by (2) $H$ divides both $F$ and $G$ in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$.

Corollary 3.2.6 If a nonconstant polynomial $F$ is irreducible in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$, then it is irreducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$.

Proposition 3.2.7 Let $F$ be an integer polynomial with positive leading coefficient. Then $F$ is irreducible in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ if and only if either

1. $F$ is a prime integer, or
2. $F$ is a primitive polynomial which is irreducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$.

Proof Suppose that $F$ is irreducible. As in Remark 3.2.2, we may write $F=c F_{0}$, where $F_{0}$ is primitive. Since $F$ is irreducible, this cannot be a proper factorization. So either $c$ or $F_{0}$ is 1 . If $F_{0}=1$, then $F$ is constant, and to be irreducible a constant polynomial must be a prime integer. The converse is trivial.

Lemma 3.2.8 In a principal ideal domain, an irreducible element is prime.

Proof Let $\mathbf{R}$ be a principal ideal domain and $F$ be an irreducible element in $\mathbf{R}$. Let $F \mid G H, G, H \in \mathbf{R}$. We assume that $F \nmid G$. Then the ideal generated by $F$ and $G$ is $\mathbf{R}$ (why?). Thus we may write $F_{1} F+$ $G_{1} G=1$ for some $F_{1}, G_{1} \in \mathbf{R}$. This implies $F_{1} F H+G_{1} G H=H$. Hence $F \mid H$. This shows that $F$ is prime.

Theorem 3.2.9 Every irreducible element of $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ is a prime element.
Proof Let $F$ be irreducible, and suppose $F$ divides $G H$, where $G$, $H \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$.

Case 1: $F=p$ is a prime integer. Write $G=c G_{0}$ and $H=d H_{0}$ as in Remark 3.2.2. Then $G_{0} H_{0}$ is primitive, and hence some coefficient $a$ of $G_{0} H_{0}$ is not divisible by $p$. But since $p$ divides $G H$, the corresponding coefficient, which is $c d a$, is divisible by $p$. Hence $p$ divides $c$ or $d$, so $p$ divides $G$ or $H$.

Case 2: $F$ is a primitive polynomial which is irreducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$. By Lemma 3.2.8, $F$ is a prime element of $\mathbb{Q}[x]$. Hence $F$ divides $G$ or $H$ in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$. By Proposition 3.2.5, $F$ divides $G$ or $H$ in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$.

Lemma 3.2.10 Let $F=a_{n} x^{n}+\cdots+a_{0} \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$ be an integer polynomial, and let $p$ be a prime integer which does not divide $a_{n}$. If the residue $\bar{F}$ of $F$ modulo $p$ is irreducible, then $F$ is irreducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$.

Proof This follows from the natural homomorphism $\mathbb{Z}[x] \longrightarrow \mathbb{F}_{p}[x]$ (see Lemma 3.2.3). We may assume that $F$ is primitive. Since $p$ does not divide $a_{n}$, the degrees of $\bar{F}$ and $F$ are equal. If $F$ factors in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$, then it also factors in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ by Corollary 3.2.6. Let $F=G H$ be a proper factorization in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$. Since $F$ is primitive, $G$ and $H$ have positive degree. Since $\operatorname{deg} F=\operatorname{deg} \bar{F}$ and $\bar{F}=\bar{G} \bar{H}$, it follows that $\operatorname{deg} G=\operatorname{deg} \bar{G}$ and $\operatorname{deg} H=\operatorname{deg} \bar{H}$, hence that $\bar{F}=\bar{G} \bar{H}$ is a proper factorization, which shows that $\bar{F}$ is reducible.

Theorem 3.2.11 (Eisenstein criterion) Let $F=a_{n} x^{n}+\cdots+a_{0} \in$ $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ be an integer polynomial, and let $p$ be a prime integer. Suppose that the coefficients of $F$ satisfy the following conditions:

1. $p$ does not divide $a_{n}$;
2. $p$ divides other coefficients $a_{n-1}, \ldots a_{0}$;
3. $p^{2}$ does not divide $a_{0}$.

Then $F$ is irreducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$. If $F$ is primitive, it is irreducible in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$.
Proof Assume $F$ satisfies the hypothesis. Let $\bar{F}$ denote the residue modulo $p$. The conditions (1) and (2) imply that $\bar{F}=\bar{a}_{n} x^{n}$ and that $\bar{a}_{n} \neq 0$. If $F$ is reducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$, then it will factor in $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ into factors of positive degree, say $F=G H$. Then $\bar{G}$ and $\bar{H}$ divide $\bar{a}_{n} x^{n}$, and hence each of these polynomials is a monomial. Therefore all coefficients of $G$ and of $H$, except the highest ones are divisible by $p$. Let the constant coefficients of $G, H$ be $b_{0}, c_{0}$. Then the constant coefficient of $F$ is $a_{0}=b_{0} c_{0}$. Since $p$ divides $b_{0}$ and $c_{0}$, it follows that $p^{2}$ divides $a_{0}$, which contradicts (3). This shows that $F$ is irreducible. The last assertion follows from Proposition 3.2.7.

Corollary 3.2.12 Let p be a prime. Then the polynomial $f(x)=x^{p-1}+$ $x^{p-2}+\cdots+x+1$ is irreducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$. (Such polynomials are called cyclotomic polynomials, and their roots are the $p^{\text {th }}$ roots of unity.)

Proof First note that $(x-1) f(x)=x^{p}-1$. Now substituting $x=y+1$ into this equation we get

$$
y f(y+1)=(y+1)^{p}-1=y^{p}+\binom{p}{1} y^{p-1}+\cdots+\binom{p}{p-1} y
$$

We have $\binom{p}{i}=p(p-1) \cdots(p-i+1) / i$. If $i<p$, then the prime $p$ is not a factor of $i$ !, so $i$ ! divides the product $(p-1) \cdots(p-i+1)$ This implies that $\binom{p}{i}$ is divisible by $p$. Dividing the expansion of $y f(y+1)$ by $y$ shows that $f(y+1)$ satisfies the Eisenstein criterion and hence it is an irreducible polynomial. This implies that $f(x)$ is also irreducible.

Theorem 3.2.13 If $\cos \alpha=\cos ^{2} \frac{\pi}{8}$, then $\alpha$ is an irrational multiple of $\pi$.

Before proceeding to the proof of this theorem we shall establish a lemma.

Lemma 3.2.14 Let $\lambda=\alpha / \pi$, where $\alpha$ is as in Theorem 3.2.13. Then $\beta=e^{2 i \pi \lambda}$ is a root of the irreducible monic polynomial $m_{\beta}=x^{4}+x^{3}+$ $\frac{1}{4} x^{2}+x+1($ over $\mathbb{Q}[x])$.

Proof Let $m_{\beta}$ be the irreducible monic polynomial which has $\beta$ as one of its roots. Note that $\sin 2 \pi \lambda$ is not equal to zero. This means $m_{\beta}$ has a complex root. Since its coefficients are rational it must also have the root $\bar{\beta}$. Thus, $m_{\beta}$ must be divisible by $x^{2}-2 R e\{\beta\}+1$. Elementary computation shows that

$$
2 \operatorname{Re}\{\beta\}=-\frac{1}{2}+\sqrt{2}
$$

So $m_{\beta}$ is divisible by $p(x)=x^{2}-\left(\sqrt{2}-\frac{1}{2}\right) x+1$. Since, $p(x)$ has irrational coefficients and $m_{\beta}$ has rational coefficients, $m_{\beta}$ must have another irrational root, say $\delta$. This implies $m_{\beta}$ has another quadratic factor with real coefficients. This means that $\operatorname{deg}\left(m_{\beta}\right) \geq 4$. Consider the polynomial $p^{\prime}(x)=x^{2}+\left(\sqrt{2}+\frac{1}{2}\right) x+1$. Multiplying $p(x)$ and $p^{\prime}(x)$
we get $x^{4}+x^{3}+\frac{1}{4} x^{2}+x+1$. From the construction $\beta$ is a root of the polynomial

$$
m_{\beta}=x^{4}+x^{3}+\frac{1}{4} x^{2}+x+1
$$

which has no rational roots.

Proof of Theorem 3.2.13 Note that the polynomial $m_{\beta}(x)$ is not cyclotomic. Let us assume that $\lambda$ is rational. Then $\beta=\frac{p}{q}$ is a root of the cyclotomic polymomial

$$
\Phi_{q}(x)=x^{q-1}+x^{q-2}+\cdots+x+1 .
$$

But $\Phi_{q}(x)=\prod_{p \mid q} \Phi_{p}(x)$, where $p$ is prime. By Corollary 3.2.12 and Theorem 3.2.9 we know this is a prime factorization of $\Phi_{q}(x)$. Since, $m_{\beta}(x)$ is minimum irreducible polynomial and $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ is a unique factorization domain (follows from Theorem 3.2.9), $m_{\beta}(x)$ is prime. Thus, $m_{\beta}(x)$ must divide $\Phi_{q}(x)$. Hence, $m_{\beta}(x)$ must be a cyclotomic polynomial, a contradiction.

## Lecture 4

## The Fourier Transform and an Application

### 4.1 Quantum Fourier Transform

The quantum Fourier transform $F$ on a finite dimensional Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ of dimension $N$ is defined as a linear operator whose action on an orthonormal basis $|0\rangle, \ldots,|N-1\rangle$ is given by

$$
F|j\rangle \rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{\frac{2 \pi i j k}{N}}|k\rangle .
$$

It can be easily verified that $F$ defined as above is a unitary operator and the matrix of the transformation is $M(F)=\left[u_{j k}\right]$, where $u_{j k}=$ $\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} e^{\frac{2 \pi i j k}{N}}$.

Theorem 4.1.1 Let the dimension of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ be $2^{n}$. Then the quantum Fourier transform $F$ also has the following product representation. Let $j=j_{1} 2^{n-1}+j_{2} 2^{n-2}+\cdots+j_{n-1} 2+j_{n}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& F|j\rangle=F\left|j_{1} j_{2} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{n}}|1\rangle\right)\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{n-1} j_{n}}|1\rangle\right) \cdots \\
& \left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{1} j_{2} \ldots j_{n}}|1\rangle\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Proof

$$
\begin{aligned}
F|j\rangle & =\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \sum_{k=0}^{2^{n}-1} e^{\frac{2 \pi i j k}{2^{n}}}|k\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \sum_{k_{1}=0}^{1} \sum_{k_{2}=0}^{1} \cdots \sum_{k_{n}=0}^{1} e^{2 \pi i j\left(\frac{k_{1}}{2^{1}}+\frac{k_{2}}{2^{2}}+\cdots+\frac{k_{n}}{\left.2^{n}\right)}\right.}\left|k_{1} k_{2} \ldots k_{n}\right\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}, \ldots, k_{n}} \otimes_{l=1}^{n} e^{\frac{2 \pi i j k_{l}}{2^{l}}}\left|k_{l}\right\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \otimes_{l=1}^{n}\left(|0\rangle+e^{\frac{2 \pi i j}{2^{l}}}|1\rangle\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{j}{2^{l}}=\text { integer }+\frac{j_{n-(l-1)}}{2}+\cdots+\frac{j_{n-1}}{2^{l-1}}+\frac{j_{n}}{2^{l}} \\
& F|j\rangle= \frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}} \otimes_{l=1}^{n}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 . j_{n-(l-1)} j_{n-(l-2) \cdots j_{n}}}|1\rangle\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 . j_{n}}|1\rangle\right)\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 . j_{n-1} j_{n}}|1\rangle\right) \ldots \\
& \quad\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 . j_{1} j_{2} \ldots j_{n}}|1\rangle\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The circuit for implementing Fourier Transform on $n$-qubits is shown in Figure 4.1.


Figure 4.1: Efficient circuit for quantum Fourier transform. The output on the $k^{\text {th }}$ qubit from top is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 . j_{n-k+1} \ldots j_{n}}|1\rangle\right)$. The correctness of the circuit follows from Theorem 4.1.1.

In Figure 4.1, $H$ represents the Hadamard gate and the unitary transform corresponding to the gate $R_{k}$ is $\left[\begin{array}{cc}1 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{\frac{2 \pi i}{2^{k}}}\end{array}\right]$. From the product representation it is easy to see that this circuit does compute the Fourier transform. To see how the circuit works we consider the input state $\left|j_{1} j_{2} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle$ and check how the system evolves. After the first Hadamard gate the state is

$$
\left(H\left|j_{1}\right\rangle\right)\left|j_{2} j_{3} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i \frac{j_{1}}{2}}|1\rangle\right)\left|j_{2} j_{3} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle
$$

After the controlled $R_{2}$ gate acting on the first qubit the state is

$$
\left(R_{2} H\left|j_{1}\right\rangle\right)\left|j_{2} j_{3} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i\left(\frac{j_{1}}{2}+\frac{j_{2}}{2^{2}}\right)}|1\rangle\right)\left|j_{2} j_{3} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle
$$

Hence, after the sequence of the controlled $R_{k}$ 's on the first qubit, the state is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(R_{n} R_{n-1} \ldots\right. & \left.R_{2} H\left|j_{1}\right\rangle\right)\left|j_{2} j_{3} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i\left(\frac{j_{1}}{2}+\frac{j_{2}}{2^{2}}+\ldots \frac{j_{n}}{2^{n}}\right)}|1\rangle\right)\left|j_{2} j_{3} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 . j_{1} j_{2} \ldots j_{n}}|1\rangle\right)\left|j_{2} j_{3} \ldots j_{n}\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, we can compute the action on the other qubits. The final state of the system is

$$
\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{1} j_{2} \ldots j_{n}}|1\rangle\right)\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{2} \ldots j_{n}}|1\rangle\right) \ldots\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{n}}|1\rangle\right)
$$

Now, if we perform the swap operation i.e. interchange the order of the qubits we get

$$
\frac{1}{2^{\frac{n}{2}}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{n}}\right)\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{n-1} j_{n}}\right) \ldots\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot j_{1} j_{2} \ldots j_{n}}\right)
$$

which is exactly the quantum Fourier transform applied to $|j\rangle$. The number of Hadamard gates used is $n$ and the number of controlled rotation gates used is $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$. In the end at most $\left\lfloor\frac{n}{2}\right\rfloor$ swap gates are used. Therefore, this circuit uses $\Theta\left(n^{2}\right)$ gates. The best classical algorithm to compute Fourier transform on $2^{n}$ elements takes $\Theta\left(2^{n}\left(\log 2^{n}\right)\right)$ gates. Thus to compute classical Fourier transform using classical gates takes exponentially more time to accomplish the task compared to computing quantum Fourier transform using a quantum computer.

Remark 4.1.2 This fact cannot be exploited very well because it is not possible to get access to the amplitudes in a quantum computer by measurements. Moreover, it is very difficult to obtain the initial state whose Fourier transform is to be computed. But quantum Fourier transform makes phase estimation "easy" which enables us to factor an integer efficiently in a quantum computer.

### 4.2 Phase Estimation

Let $U$ be a unitary operator with eigenvector $|u\rangle$ and eigenvalue $e^{2 \pi i \varphi}$ where $0 \leq \varphi \leq 1$. If $|u\rangle$ and controlled $U^{2^{j}}$ are available then using Fourier transform one can efficiently estimate the phase $\varphi$. The circuit for the first stage of the phase estimation is shown below.


Figure 4.2: First stage of the phase estimation circuit. Normalization factors of $1 / \sqrt{2}$ have been omitted, on the right side.

In the second stage of the phase estimation inverse Fourier transform is applied on some selected qubits and a measurement is done on those qubits in the computational basis. It will be shown that this yields a good estimate of the phase.

The first stage of the phase estimation uses two registers. The first register contains $t$ qubits all in the state $|0\rangle$ and the second register contains $n$ qubits in the state $|u\rangle$. The number of qubits $t$ in the first register is chosen according to the accuracy and the probability of success required in the phase estimation procedure.

The final state after the first stage is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{2^{\frac{t}{2}}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 2^{t-1} \varphi}|1\rangle\right)\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 2^{t-2} \varphi}|1\rangle\right) \ldots\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 2^{0} \varphi}|1\rangle\right)|u\rangle \\
&=\frac{1}{2^{\frac{t}{2}}} \sum_{k=0}^{2^{t}-1} e^{2 \pi i \varphi k}|k\rangle|u\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

In the second stage inverse Fourier transform is applied on the first register (the first $t$ qubits). This gives us a good estimate of $\varphi$. A schematic of the circuit is shown in Figure 4.3. To get a rough idea why this is true we consider the case when $\varphi$ can be expressed exactly in $t$ bits (in binary) $\varphi=0 \cdot \varphi_{1} \varphi_{2} \ldots \varphi_{t}$. In this case the final state after stage one can be written as

$$
\frac{1}{2^{\frac{t}{2}}}\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot \varphi_{t}}|1\rangle\right)\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot \varphi_{t-1} \varphi_{t}}|1\rangle\right) \ldots\left(|0\rangle+e^{2 \pi i 0 \cdot \varphi_{1} \varphi_{2} \ldots \varphi_{t}}|1\rangle\right)|u\rangle
$$

If we look at the product representation of the Fourier transform it is immediate that the above expression is the Fourier transform of the state $\left|\varphi_{1} \varphi_{2} \ldots \varphi_{t}\right\rangle$. Hence measurement in the computational basis after the inverse Fourier transform will give the exact value of $\varphi$. If $\varphi$ cannot be represented in $t$ bits the observed value after measurement will be some $\tilde{\varphi}$. In the next section we analyze how good is $\tilde{\varphi}$ as an estimate of $\varphi$.

### 4.3 Analysis of the Phase Estimation Circuit

In this section we assume that $2^{t} \varphi$ is not an integer. We follow the evolution of the state $\underbrace{|0\rangle \ldots|0\rangle}_{t}|u\rangle$ in the circuit depicted in Figure 4.3:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\underbrace{|0\rangle \ldots|0\rangle}_{t}|u\rangle & \rightarrow \frac{1}{2^{\frac{t}{2}}} \sum_{j=0}^{2^{t}-1}|j\rangle|u\rangle \\
& \rightarrow \frac{1}{2^{\frac{t}{2}}} \sum_{j}|j\rangle e^{2 \pi i j \varphi}|u\rangle \\
& \rightarrow \frac{1}{2^{t}} \sum_{j, k} e^{\frac{-2 \pi i j k}{2^{t}}+2 \pi i j \varphi}|k\rangle|u\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{2^{t}} \sum_{k} \frac{1-e^{2 \pi i\left(\varphi-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right) 2^{t}}}{1-e^{2 \pi i\left(\varphi-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right)}}|k\rangle|u\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 4.3: The schematic for the overall phase estimation circuit.

Hence measurement of the first register (the first $t$ qubits) produces a random variable $x$ with values in $X=\left\{0,1, \ldots, 2^{t}-1\right\}$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Pr}(x=k) & =\frac{1}{2^{2 t}}\left|\frac{1-e^{2 \pi i\left(\varphi-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right) 2^{t}}}{1-e^{2 \pi i\left(\varphi-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right)}}\right|^{2} \\
& =\frac{1}{2^{2 t}} \frac{\sin ^{2} \pi\left(\varphi-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right) 2^{t}}{\sin ^{2} \pi\left(\varphi-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

If the observed value is $k$, then $\frac{k}{2^{t}}$ is the desired estimate for $\varphi$. Let $a=\left\lfloor 2^{t} \varphi\right\rfloor, d=\varphi-\frac{a}{2^{t}}$ and $\delta$ be a positive integer $<2^{t-1}$. We set $\frac{\delta}{2^{t}}$ to be the desired tolerance of error in the estimate of $\varphi$. In other words, the observed value of the random variable $x$ should lie in

$$
X_{\delta}=\left\{a-\delta+1\left(\bmod 2^{t}\right), a-\delta+2\left(\bmod 2^{t}\right), \ldots, a+\delta\left(\bmod 2^{t}\right)\right\}
$$

We now obtain a lower bound for the probability $\operatorname{Pr}\left(X_{\delta}\right)$.
We will need the following elementary fact which we leave as an exercise.

Exercise 4.3.1 Show that for any $\theta \in\left(0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right], \frac{\sin \theta}{\theta} \geq \frac{2}{\pi}$.

Note that for $-2^{t-1}<k \leq 2^{t-1}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Pr}\left(x=a+k\left(\bmod 2^{t}\right)\right) & =\frac{1}{2^{2 t}} \frac{\sin ^{2} \pi\left(\varphi-\frac{a+k}{2^{t}}\right) 2^{t}}{\sin ^{2} \pi\left(\varphi-\frac{a+k}{2^{t}}\right)} \\
& =\frac{1}{2^{2 t}} \frac{\sin ^{2} \pi\left(2^{t} d-k\right)}{\sin ^{2} \pi\left(d-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right)} \\
& \leq \frac{1}{2^{2 t}} \frac{1}{\sin ^{2} \pi\left(d-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right)} \\
& \leq \frac{1}{4\left(k-2^{t} d\right)^{2}}(\text { follows from Exercise 4.3.1 })
\end{aligned}
$$

Now we are ready to give the bound.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Pr}\left(X-X_{\delta}\right) & =\sum_{j=-2^{t-1}+1}^{-\delta} \operatorname{Pr}\left(x=a+j\left(\bmod 2^{t}\right)\right)+\sum_{j=\delta+1}^{2^{t-1}} \operatorname{Pr}\left(x=a+j\left(\bmod 2^{t}\right)\right) \\
& \leq \frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{j=-2^{t-1}+1}^{-\delta} \frac{1}{\left(j-2^{t} d\right)^{2}}+\sum_{j=\delta+1}^{2^{t-1}} \frac{1}{\left(j-2^{t} d\right)^{2}}\right) \\
& <\frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{j=-2^{t-1}+1}^{-\delta} \frac{1}{j^{2}}+\sum_{j=\delta+1}^{2^{t-1}} \frac{1}{(j-1)^{2}}\right)\left(\text { since } 0<2^{t} d<1\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=\delta}^{2^{t-1}-1} \frac{1}{j^{2}} \\
& <\frac{1}{2} \int_{\delta-1}^{\infty} \frac{d y}{y^{2}} \\
& =\frac{1}{2(\delta-1)}
\end{aligned}
$$

To approximate $\varphi$ up to the first $r$ bits (where $r<t$ ) in the binary expansion, we need to choose $\delta \leq 2^{t-r}-1$. If we use $t=r+p$ qubits in the first register of the phase estimation circuit, the probability of obtaining an estimate of the phase within the desired error margin is at least $1-\frac{1}{2\left(2^{p}-2\right)}$. Let $1-\epsilon$ be the probability of obtaining an estimate within the desired tolerance of error. Then

$$
\epsilon \geq \frac{1}{2\left(2^{p}-2\right)} \Rightarrow p \geq \log \left(2+\frac{1}{2 \epsilon}\right)
$$

Hence, if the desired accuracy is $r$ and the required probability of successfully getting such an estimate is $1-\epsilon$, then we need to choose

$$
t \geq r+\log \left(2+\frac{1}{2 \epsilon}\right)
$$

It is easy to see that the phase-estimation circuit uses polynomially many gates.

## Lecture 5

## Order Finding

### 5.1 The Order Finding Algorithm

For any two positive integers $x, y$ denote their greatest common divisor (GCD) by $(x, y)$. For any positive integer $N$ let $\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$ denote the set $\{x \mid x \in \mathbb{N},(x, N)=1\}$. Under multiplication modulo $N, \mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$ is an abelian group. Let $\varphi(N)$ be the order of this group. Then $\varphi(\cdot)$ is called the Eulers's $\varphi$ function. The order of an element $x \in \mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$ is defined to be the smallest positive integer $r$ satisfying $x^{r}=1(\bmod N)$. In the classical model of computation finding the order of an element in $\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$ is considered to be a hard problem. Using the phase estimation procedure of quantum computation we shall demonstrate how one can determine the order of an element with high probability using only a polynomial number of gates.

To solve the problem of order finding using a quantum computer we first translate the problem into a problem concerning unitary operators as follows.

Let $N$ be an $L$ bit number so that
$N=2^{j_{0}}+2^{j_{1}}+2^{j_{2}}+\cdots+2^{j_{k-1}}$ where $0 \leq j_{0}<j_{1}<j_{2}<\cdots<j_{k-1}<L$.
Let the Hilbert space generated by L qubits be denoted by $\mathcal{H}=\left(\mathbb{C}^{2}\right)^{\otimes L}$. We define a unitary operator $U$ in $\mathcal{H}$ by

$$
U|y\rangle= \begin{cases}|x y(\bmod N)\rangle & \text { if } y<N, \quad(y=0,1,2, \ldots, N-1) \\ |y\rangle & \text { if } N \leq y \leq 2^{L}-1\end{cases}
$$

It is to be noted that if $\left|x y_{1}(\bmod N)\right\rangle=\left|x y_{2}(\bmod N)\right\rangle$ for $0 \leq$ $y_{1}<y_{2}<N$ then we have $x\left(y_{2}-y_{1}\right) \equiv 0(\bmod N)$. But GCD of $x$ and $N$ is 1 . So $N \mid\left(y_{2}-y_{1}\right)$ which is impossible. This means $U$ is a permutation matrix and hence unitary.

Let

$$
\left|u_{s}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{\sqrt{r}} \sum_{k=0}^{r-1} e^{-2 \pi i \frac{s k}{r}}\left|x^{k}(\bmod N)\right\rangle
$$

We observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
U\left|u_{s}\right\rangle & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{r}} \sum_{k=0}^{r-1} e^{-2 \pi i \frac{s k}{r}}\left|x^{k+1}(\bmod N)\right\rangle \\
& =e^{2 \pi i \frac{s}{r}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{r}} \sum_{k=0}^{r-1} e^{-2 \pi i \frac{s k}{r}}\left|x^{k}(\bmod N)\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $\left|u_{s}\right\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the unitary matrix $U$ with corresponding eigenvalue $e^{2 \pi i \frac{s}{r}}$, for all $s \in\{0,1,2, \ldots, r-1\}$.

Now if we use the phase estimation algorithm we will get enough information to obtain the order $r$. But in order to be able to use the phase estimation we must be able to implement the controlled $U^{2^{j}}$ operation efficiently. The other requirement is that we must be able to prepare the eigenvectors accurately.

The controlled $U^{2^{j}}$ operations can be implemented using $O\left(L^{3}\right)$ gates as outlined in Appendix 2. But the second requirement seems impossible because we need to know $r$ in order to prepare the eigen states. This problem can be solved by observing that

$$
\frac{1}{\sqrt{r}} \sum_{s=0}^{r-1}\left|u_{s}\right\rangle=|1\rangle
$$

Thus in the phase estimation procedure if we set the number of qubits in the first register $t=2 L+1+\left\lceil 2+\frac{1}{2 \epsilon}\right\rceil$ and the $L$ qubits in the second register in the state $|1\rangle$, then for each $s \in\{0,1, \ldots, r-1\}$ we will get an estimate of the phase $\widetilde{\varphi} \approx \frac{s}{r}$ correct up to the first $2 L+1$ bits with probability at least $\frac{1-\epsilon}{r}$. The circuit is shown in Figure 5.1.

It can be checked that if in the phase estimation circuit we feed in the superposition of eigen states

$$
|u\rangle=\sum_{s=0}^{r-1} c_{s}\left|u_{s}\right\rangle, \quad \text { where } \sum_{s=0}^{r-1}\left|c_{s}\right|^{2}=1
$$

then the output state before measurement will be

$$
\frac{1}{2^{t}} \sum_{s, k} c_{s}\left\{\frac{1-e^{2 \pi i\left(\varphi_{s}-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right) 2^{t}}}{1-e^{2 \pi i\left(\varphi_{s}-\frac{k}{2^{t}}\right)}}\right\}|k\rangle\left|u_{s}\right\rangle
$$



Figure 5.1: Quantum circuit for order finding algorithm. The first register is initialized to state $|0\rangle$ and the second register is initialized to state $|1\rangle$.

Hence on measuring the first $t$ qubits we will get the value of the phase $\varphi_{s}$ correct up to $2 L+1$ bits with probability at least $\left|c_{s}\right|^{2}(1-\epsilon)$.

Now our job is to extract the value of $r$ from the estimated phase. We know the phase $\widetilde{\varphi} \approx \frac{s}{r}$ correct up to $2 L+1$ places. If this estimate is close enough, we should be able to get $r$ because we know that $\widetilde{\varphi}$ is the ratio of two bounded integers. This task is accomplished efficiently using the following result from number theory.

Theorem 5.1.1 If $\frac{s}{r}$ is a rational number such that $\left|\frac{s}{r}-\widetilde{\varphi}\right| \leq \frac{1}{2 r^{2}}$, then $\frac{s}{r}$ is a convergent of the continued fraction for $\widetilde{\varphi}$ and hence can be efficiently computed using the continued fraction algorithm.

Proof See Appendix 3.

We know that $\left|\frac{s}{r}-\tilde{\varphi}\right| \leq 2^{-(2 L+1)} \leq \frac{1}{2 r^{2}}$, since $r \leq N \leq 2^{L}$. So if we now use the continued fraction algorithm we will get the fraction $\frac{s^{\prime}}{r^{\prime}}$ which is equal to $\frac{s}{r}$ with $\left(r^{\prime}, s^{\prime}\right)=1$. Thus if $s$ and $r$ are relatively prime then we get the order of the element $x$. We know that the number of positive integers relatively prime and less than $r$ is at least $\frac{0 \cdot 1 r \log \log r}{\log r}$ (see Appendix 4). The order finding algorithm fails if the phase estimation algorithm gives a bad estimate or if $s$ divides $r$. The probability that the first case does not occur is at least $(1-\epsilon)$ and the second case does not occur is at least $\frac{0 \cdot 1 \log \log N}{\log N}$. Hence if we repeat the algorithm $O(L)$ times we will find the order with probability greater than $1-\delta$ for any fixed $\delta \in(0,1]$. Note that the algorithm presented here can be implemented with $O\left(L^{4}\right)$ gates.

The algorithm can be summarized as follows
Inputs: Relatively prime integers $N$ and $x$.
Output: Order of $x$.
Runtime: $O\left(L^{4}\right)$.

## Procedure:

Initialize: Set "current smallest" equal to $N$.

1. Prepare $U_{(x, N)}$
2. $|0\rangle|1\rangle$
3. $\rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^{t}}} \sum_{j=0}^{2^{t}-1}|j\rangle|1\rangle$
4. $\quad \rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^{t}}} \sum_{j=0}^{2^{t}-1}|j\rangle\left|x^{j}(\bmod N)\right\rangle$
$\approx$
$\frac{1}{\sqrt{r 2^{t}}} \sum_{s=0}^{r-1} \sum_{j=0}^{2^{t}-1} e^{\frac{2 \pi i s j}{r}}|j\rangle\left|u_{s}\right\rangle$
5. $\rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{r}} \sum_{s=0}^{r-1}|\tilde{\varphi}\rangle\left|u_{s}\right\rangle$
6. $\tilde{\varphi}$
7. Get denominator of all convergents of $\tilde{\varphi}$
8. For all integers $i$ obtained in Step 7 , check if $x^{i}=1$ and keep the smallest of them.
9. Update "current smallest"
10. Repeat steps 1 to $9 O(\log N)$ times
11. Return "current smallest"

The equivalent sequence of controlled $U^{2^{j}}$ operations. Initial state. Create superposition.
Apply $U_{(x, N)}$.

Apply inverse FT to first register.
Measure first register. Use Theorem 5.1.2 of Appendix 3.

With a high probability. This is the order.

## Appendix 1: Classical reversible computation

All quantum gates are reversible (i.e. from the output we can uniquely recover the input). But the classical gates like 'AND' and 'OR' are not reversible. So a quantum circuit cannot exist for any such gate. However, by adding a few extra wires we can obtain a gate which is reversible and the required function appears on specified wires. This is called a reversible classical gate. If the 'size' of the circuit is measured by
the number of 'wires' then this procedure uses only a constant multiple of the number of wires used in the earlier classical circuit. The latter gate can be implemented using a quantum gate. Reversible classical gates can be built using the Fredkin gate (see Figure 5.2).


Figure 5.2: Fredkin gate (controlled swap).

If we set $x$ to 0 then $x^{\prime}$ will be $y \wedge c$ which is the AND gate. If we set $x=0$ and $y=1$ then we get $c$ on $x^{\prime}$ and $\neg c$ on $y^{\prime}$. Thus we get both NOT and FANOUT gates. CNOT can also be used to copy classical bits. In the process of constructing functional equivalents of the classical gates using quantum gates some extra wires have been introduced. The outputs of these wires are called junk. But if the 'junk' is some arbitrary function of the input then the circuit may not behave as a quantum gate for the function $f(x)$. So instead of some junk output we would like to have some fixed output on the extra wires. This model is called clean computation. This can be done as shown in the Figures 5.3, 5.4 and 5.5.


Figure 5.3: Reversible gate


Figure 5.4: Clean computation. Computing $x \mapsto\langle x, f(x)\rangle$

## Appendix 2: Efficient implementation of controlled $U^{2^{j}}$ operation

To compute the sequence of controlled $U^{2^{j}}$ operations we have to compute the transformation

$$
\begin{aligned}
|z\rangle|y\rangle & \rightarrow|z\rangle U^{z_{t} 2^{t-1}} \cdots U^{z_{1} 2^{0}}|y\rangle \\
& =|z\rangle\left|x^{z_{t} 2^{2-1}} \times \cdots \times x^{z_{1} 2^{0}} y(\bmod N)\right\rangle \\
& =|z\rangle\left|x^{z} y(\bmod N)\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus the sequence of controlled $U^{2^{j}}$ operations is equivalent to multiplying the content of the second register by the modular exponential $x^{z}(\bmod N)$, where $z$ is the content of the first register. This can be computed using clean reversible computation (see Appendix 1).

This is achieved by first reversibly computing the function $x^{z}(\bmod ) N$ in a third register and then multiplying the contents of the third and the second register such that each qubit in the third register is in the state $|0\rangle$. The task is accomplished in two stages. In the first stage we compute $x^{2^{j}}$ for all $j \in\{1,2, \ldots, t-1\}$ by successively squaring


Figure 5.5: Computing a bijective function $f$
$x(\bmod N)$, where $t=2 L+1+\left\lceil\log 2+\frac{1}{2 \epsilon}\right\rceil=O(L)$. Each multiplication uses at most $O\left(L^{2}\right)$ gates (Indeed an $O(L \log L \log \log L)$ algorithm using FFT is known. See [2,10].) and there are $t-1$ such multiplications. Hence in this step at most $O\left(L^{3}\right)$ gates are used. In the second stage we compute $x^{z}(\bmod N)$ using the identity

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x^{z}(\bmod N)= \\
& \quad\left(x^{z_{t} 2^{t-1}}(\bmod N)\right)\left(x^{z_{t} 2^{t-2}}(\bmod N)\right) \cdots\left(x^{z_{4} 2^{0}}(\bmod N)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Clearly this operation also uses at most $O\left(L^{3}\right)$ gates. Hence using $O\left(L^{3}\right)$ gates we compute the transformation $|z\rangle|y\rangle \rightarrow|z\rangle\left|x^{z} y(\bmod N)\right\rangle$.

## Appendix 3: Continued fraction algorithm

A finite continued fraction of $n+1$ variables is defined as

$$
a_{0}+\frac{1}{a_{1}+\frac{1}{a_{2}+\frac{1}{a_{3}+\cdots \frac{1}{a_{n}}}}} .
$$

For convenience it is also written as $\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]$. The $n$th convergent of a continued fraction $\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots a_{N}\right]$ is defined as $\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]$ for $n \leq N$.

The $n$th convergent is easily computed by the following theorem.

Theorem 5.1.2 If $p_{n}$ and $q_{n}$ are defined by

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\qquad p_{0}=a_{0}, \quad p_{1}=a_{1} a_{0}+1, \quad p_{n}=a_{n} p_{n-1}+p_{n-2} \text { for } 2 \leq n \leq N, \\
q_{0}=1, q_{1}=a_{1}, q_{n}=a_{n} q_{n-1}+q_{n-2} \text { for } 2 \leq n \leq N
\end{array}\right\} .
$$

Proof We prove by induction. It is easy to check for the base cases $n=1,2$.
Induction Hypothesis: The conclusion holds for $1 \leq n \leq m$.

Induction step:

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}, a_{m+1}\right] } & =\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m-1}, a_{m}+\frac{1}{a_{m+1}}\right] \\
& =\frac{\left(a_{m}+\frac{1}{a_{m+1}}\right) p_{m-1}+p_{m-2}}{\left(a_{m}+\frac{1}{a_{m+1}}\right) q_{m-1}+q_{m-2}} \\
& =\frac{a_{m+1}\left(a_{m} p_{m-1}+p_{m-2}\right)+p_{m-1}}{a_{m+1}\left(a_{m} q_{m-1}+q_{m-2}\right)+q_{m-1}} \\
& =\frac{a_{m+1} p_{m}+p_{m-1}}{a_{m+1} q_{m}+q_{m-1}} \\
& =\frac{p_{m+1}}{q_{m+1}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 5.1.3 The functions $p_{n}$ and $q_{n}$ satisfy the following relation

$$
p_{n} q_{n-1}-p_{n-1} q_{n}=(-1)^{n}
$$

Proof We use induction. The result is true for the base cases $n=1,2$. Assume the result is true for any integer less than $n$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{n} q_{n-1}-p_{n-1} q_{n} & =\left(a_{n} p_{n-1}+p_{n-2}\right) q_{n-1}-p_{n-1}\left(a_{n} q_{n-1}+q_{n-2}\right) \\
& =-1\left(p_{n-1} q_{n-2}-p_{n-2} q_{n-1}\right) \\
& =(-1)^{n}
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof.

Let $x$ be a real number. Then the system of equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
x & =a_{0}+\alpha_{0} & & \text { with } a_{0} \in \mathbb{Z} \text { and } \alpha_{0} \in[0,1) \\
\frac{1}{\alpha_{0}} & =a_{1}+\alpha_{1} & & \text { with } a_{1} \in \mathbb{Z} \text { and } \alpha_{1} \in[0,1) \\
\frac{1}{\alpha_{1}} & =a_{2}+\alpha_{2} & & \text { with } a_{2} \in \mathbb{Z} \text { and } \alpha_{2} \in[0,1)
\end{aligned}
$$

is called the continued fraction algorithm. The algorithm continues till $\alpha_{n} \neq 0$.

It is easy to see that if the algorithm terminates in $N+1$ steps then $x=\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{N}\right]$ and hence rational. But the converse of this is also true.

Theorem 5.1.4 Any rational number can be represented by a finite continued fraction.

Proof Let $x=\frac{h}{k}$. Then from the continued fraction algorithm we get the following set of equations.

$$
\begin{aligned}
h & =a_{0} k+k_{1} \\
& \left(0<k_{1}<k\right) \\
k & =a_{1} k_{1}+k_{2} \\
& \left(0<k_{2}<k_{1}\right) \\
& \vdots
\end{aligned}
$$

We observe that $k>k_{1}>k_{2} \cdots$. Hence the algorithm must terminate. Also, this is exactly the Euclid's GCD algorithm. Hence its complexity is $O\left((\log (h+k))^{3}\right)($ see $[5,10])$.

Theorem 5.1.5 If $x$ is representable by a simple continued fraction with an odd (even) number of convergents, it is also representable by one with an even (odd) number of convergents.

Proof Let $x=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]$. If $a_{n} \geq 2$, then $\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}-1,1\right]$. If $a_{n}=1$, then $\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n-1}, 1\right]=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n-1}+1\right]$.

Theorem 5.1.6 Let $x$ be a rational number and $p$ and $q$ two integers such that

$$
\left|\frac{p}{q}-x\right| \leq \frac{1}{2 q^{2}} .
$$

Then $\frac{p}{q}$ is a convergent of the continued fraction for $x$.
Proof Let $\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]$ be the continued fraction expansion of $\frac{p}{q}$. From Theorem 5.1.5 it follows that without loss of generality we may assume $n$ to be even. Let $p_{i}$ and $q_{i}$ be defined as in Theorem 5.1.2.

Let $\delta$ be defined by the equation

$$
x=\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}+\frac{\delta}{2 q_{n}^{2}} .
$$

Then $|\delta| \leq 1$ and $\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}=\frac{p}{q}$ is the $n$th convergent. Let

$$
\lambda=2\left(\frac{q_{n} p_{n-1}-p_{n} q_{n-1}}{\delta}\right)-\frac{q_{n-1}}{q_{n}} .
$$

The definition of $\lambda$ ensures that the equation

$$
x=\frac{\lambda p_{n}+p_{n-1}}{\lambda q_{n}+q_{n-1}}
$$

is satisfied. Hence $x=\left[a_{0}, \ldots a_{n}, \lambda\right]$. By Theorem 5.1 .3 we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda & =\frac{2}{\delta}-\frac{q_{n-1}}{q_{n}} \\
& >2-1 \text { since } q_{i}>q_{i-1} \\
& =1
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies that $\lambda$ is a rational number greater than 1 and it has a finite continued fraction, say $\left[b_{0}, \ldots, b_{m}\right]$. Hence $x=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}, b_{0}, \ldots, b_{m}\right]$. Thus $\frac{p}{q}$ is a convergent of $x$.

## Appendix 4: Estimating $\frac{\varphi(r)}{r}$

Lemma 5.1.7 The ratio $\frac{\varphi(r)}{r}$ is at least $\frac{\log \log r}{10 \log r}$ for $r \geq 16$.

Proof Let $r=\prod_{i=1}^{a} p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}} \prod_{j=1}^{b} q_{j}^{\beta_{j}}$, where

$$
p_{1}<p_{2}<\cdots<p_{a} \leq \frac{2 \log r}{\log \log r}<q_{1}<q_{2}<\cdots<q_{b}
$$

Then

$$
\varphi(r)=\prod_{i=1}^{a}\left(p_{i}-1\right) p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}-1} \prod_{j=1}^{b}\left(q_{i}-1\right) q_{i}^{\beta_{j}-1}
$$

Note that $q_{1}^{b} \leq r$. This implies $b \leq \log _{q} r \leq \log r$. Since $q_{1}>\frac{2 \log r}{\log \log r}$, we have $b \leq \frac{\log r}{\log \log r-\log \log \log r+\log 2}$.

Hence,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\varphi(r)}{r} & =\frac{\prod_{i=1}^{a}\left(p_{i}-1\right) p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}-1} \prod_{j=1}^{b}\left(q_{j}-1\right) q_{j}^{\beta_{j}-1}}{\prod_{i=1}^{a} p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}} \prod_{j=1}^{b} q_{i}^{\beta_{j}}} \\
& =\prod_{i=1}^{a}\left(\frac{p_{i}-1}{p_{i}}\right) \prod_{j=1}^{b}\left(1-\frac{1}{q_{j}}\right) \\
& >\prod_{i=2}^{\frac{2 \log r}{\log \log r}}\left(\frac{i-1}{i}\right) \prod_{j=1}^{b}\left(1-\frac{1}{q_{j}}\right) \\
& =\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r} \prod_{j=1}^{b}\left(1-\frac{1}{q_{j}}\right) \\
& >\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r}\left(1-\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r}\right)^{b} \\
& >\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r}\left(1-\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r} b\right) \\
& =\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r}\left[1-\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r}\left(\frac{\log }{\log \log r-\log \log \log r+\log 2}\right)\right] \\
& >\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r}\left[\frac{1-2 E}{2(1-E)}\right] \text { where } E=\frac{\log \log \log r-\log 2}{\log \log r} \\
& >\frac{\log \log r}{2 \log r}\left(\frac{1-2 E}{2}\right) \\
& >\frac{\log \log r}{10 \log r} \text { for } r \geq 16 .
\end{aligned}
$$

In fact the following theorem is true.
Theorem 5.1.8 $\underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\varphi(n) \log \log n}{n}=e^{-\gamma}$ where $\gamma$ is the Euler's constant.

The interested reader may look up Hardy and Wright [6] for the proof.

## Lecture 6

## Shor's Algorithm

### 6.1 Factoring to Order Finding

Lemma 6.1.1 Let $N$ be an odd number with prime factorization $p_{1}^{\alpha_{1}} p_{2}^{\alpha_{2}} \ldots p_{m}^{\alpha_{m}}, m \geq 2$. Let
$A \triangleq\left\{x \in \mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*} \mid(\operatorname{ord}(x)\right.$ is odd $)$ or $\left(\operatorname{ord}(x)\right.$ is even and $\left.\left.x^{\operatorname{ord}(x) / 2}=-\mathbf{1}\right)\right\}$, where $\operatorname{ord}(x)=\min \left\{i \geq 1 \mid x^{i}=\mathbf{1}\right\}$. If $x$ is chosen at ramdom from $\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$, then

$$
\operatorname{Pr}_{x \in \mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}}(x \in A) \leq \frac{1}{2^{m-1}}
$$

Proof ${ }^{1}$ Let $\left|\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}\right|=\varphi(N)=2^{\ell} s$, where $s$ is odd (note $\ell \geq 2$ ). Let $V$ be the set of square-roots of $\mathbf{1}$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$.

Lemma 6.1.2 (a) If $\operatorname{ord}(x)$ is odd, then $x^{s}=\mathbf{1}$.
(b) If $\operatorname{ord}(x)$ is even, then $x^{2^{i} s} \in V-\{\mathbf{1}\}$, for some $i \in\{0,1, \ldots, \ell-1\}$.
(c) If $\operatorname{ord}(x)$ is even and $x^{\operatorname{ord}(x) / 2}=-\mathbf{1}$, then $x^{2^{i} s}=-\mathbf{1}$ for some $i \in\{0,1, \ldots, \ell-1\}$.

Proof (a) Since $x \in \mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$, we have $\operatorname{ord}(x) \mid \phi(N)$. Since ord $(x)$ is odd, $\operatorname{ord}(x) \mid s$.

[^0](b) and (c) Let ord $(x)=2^{\ell^{\prime}} s^{\prime}$ (where $\ell^{\prime} \geq 1$ and $s^{\prime}$ is odd). Then, $\operatorname{ord}(x) \mid 2^{\ell^{\prime}} s$, but $\operatorname{ord}(x) \nmid 2^{\ell^{\prime}-1} s$. Hence, $x^{2^{\ell^{\prime}-1} s} \in V-\{\mathbf{1}\}$. Now, if $x^{\operatorname{ord}(x) / 2}=\mathbf{- 1}$, then $x^{2^{\ell^{\prime}-1} s^{\prime}}=-1$. Hence, $x^{2^{\ell^{\prime}-1} s}=\mathbf{- 1}$.

For $i=0,1, \ldots, \ell-1$, and $v \in V$, let $S_{i, v} \triangleq\left\{x \in \mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}: x^{2^{i} s}=v\right\}$. By Lemma 6.1.2, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
A & \subseteq S_{0, \mathbf{1}} \cup \bigcup_{i=0}^{\ell-1} S_{i,-\mathbf{1}}  \tag{6.1.3}\\
\text { and } \quad \mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*} & =S_{0, \mathbf{1}} \cup \bigcup_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \bigcup_{v \in V-\{\mathbf{1}\}} S_{i, v} \tag{6.1.4}
\end{align*}
$$

Lemma 6.1.5 All the sets appearing on the right hand side of (6.1.4) are disjoint.

Proof Consider two such sets $S_{i, v}$ and $S_{j, w}$ appearing above. If $i=j$ then $v \neq w$ and these sets are disjoint by defnition. Hence, suppose $i<j$; this implies that $w \neq 1$. But for each $x \in S_{i, v}$, we have $x^{2^{i+1} s}=$ $v^{2}=\mathbf{1}$. This implies that $x^{2^{j} s}=\mathbf{1} \neq w$, and therefore $x \notin S_{j, w}$.

To prove that $|A| \leq 2^{-m+1}\left|\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}\right|$, we will use the isomorphism

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*} & \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{p_{1}^{\alpha_{1}}}^{*} \times \mathbb{Z}_{p_{2}^{\alpha_{2}}}^{*} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{Z}_{p_{m}^{\alpha_{m}}}^{*} \\
\quad j & \mapsto\left(j\left(\bmod p_{1}^{\alpha_{1}}\right), j\left(\bmod p_{2}^{\alpha_{2}}\right), \ldots, j\left(\bmod p_{m}^{\alpha_{m}}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

which follows from the Chinese remainder theorem.
Since $p_{i}$ is odd, $\mathbf{1} \neq-\mathbf{1}\left(\bmod p_{i}^{\alpha_{i}}\right)$, for $i=1,2, \ldots, m$, and the $2^{m}$ elements in $W=\{+1,-1\}^{m}$ correspond to square roots of $\mathbf{1}$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}$; of these, the only trivial square roots are $\mathbf{1}=(1,1, \ldots, 1)$ and $-\mathbf{1}=(-1,-1, \ldots,-1)$.

## Lemma 6.1.6

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|S_{0, \mathbf{1}}\right| & =\left|S_{0,-\mathbf{1}}\right|  \tag{6.1.7}\\
\left|S_{j,-\mathbf{1}}\right| & =\left|S_{j, w}\right|, \quad \text { for } w \in W \text { and } j=0,1, \ldots, \ell-1 \tag{6.1.8}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof To see (6.1.7), observe that $x \in S_{0,1}$ if and only if $x^{s}=\mathbf{1}$, if and only if $(-x)^{s}=-\mathbf{1}$, if and only if $-x \in S_{0,-\mathbf{1}}$.

To prove (6.1.8), fix $j$ and $w$. We first show that if $S_{j,-\mathbf{1}} \neq \emptyset$, then $S_{j, w} \neq \emptyset$. For, suppose $b=\left(b_{1}, b_{2}, \ldots, b_{m}\right) \in S_{j,-\mathbf{1}}$. Then, consider $c \in \mathbb{Z}_{p^{\alpha_{1}}}^{*} \times \mathbb{Z}_{p_{2}^{\alpha_{2}}}^{*} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{Z}_{p_{m}^{\alpha_{m}}}^{*}$, defined by

$$
c_{i}= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } w_{i}=1 \\ b_{i} & \text { if } w_{i}=-1\end{cases}
$$

Clearly, $c^{2^{j} s}=w$, so $S_{j, w} \neq \emptyset$. Furthermore, the map $x \mapsto c b^{-1} x$ is a bijection between $S_{j,-\mathbf{1}}$ and $S_{j, w}$. Hence, $\left|S_{j,-\mathbf{1}}\right|=\left|S_{j, w}\right|$.

Since $|W|=2^{m}$, from (6.1.3), (6.1.4) and Lemma 6.1 .6 we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
2^{m-1}\left|S_{0, \mathbf{1}} \cup S_{0,-\mathbf{1}}\right| & =\left|\bigcup_{w \in W} S_{0, w}\right| \\
\text { and for } i=0,1,2, \ldots, \ell-1, \quad\left(2^{m}-1\right)\left|S_{i,-\mathbf{1}}\right| & =\left|\bigcup_{w \in\{W-\{\mathbf{1}\}\}} S_{i, w}\right|,
\end{aligned}
$$

which implies

$$
\begin{aligned}
2^{m-1}|A| & \leq 2^{m-1}\left|S_{0, \mathbf{1}} \cup \bigcup_{i=0}^{\ell-1} S_{i,-\mathbf{1}}\right| \\
& \leq\left|S_{0, \mathbf{1}} \cup \bigcup_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \bigcup_{w \in\{W-\{\mathbf{1}\}\}} S_{i, w}\right| \\
& \leq\left|S_{0, \mathbf{1}} \cup \bigcup_{i=0}^{\ell-1} \bigcup_{v \in\{V-\{\mathbf{1}\}\}} S_{i, v}\right| \\
& =\left|\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

Lemma 6.1 .1 is the main tool for analyzing the Shor's factoring algorithm. The crucial observation is that, if we can get a nontrivial square root of unity, then we can find a nontrivial factor of $N$ using Euclid's G.C.D. algorithm. Lemma 6.1.1 tells us that if we randomly pick a number $x$, less than $N$ and look at its order, with probability greater than $1-\frac{1}{2^{m-1}}$ it is even and we can get a nontrivial square root of unity
by raising $x$ to the power ord $(x) / 2$. The lemma holds if $N$ is odd and has at least two distinct prime factors. But a classical polynomial time algorithm exists for finding the prime number which divides $N$, if $N$ is a prime power. So this gives us a polynomial time factoring algorithm. So far it is not known whether classical computers can factorize a number $N$ in polynomial time, even if randomness is allowed. Below is the Shor's factoring algorithm.

## Shor's factoring algorithm.

## Input N

1) If $N$ is even, return 2 .
2) Use quantum order finding algorithm to find the order of 2 . If $\operatorname{ord}(2)=N-1$, conclude $N$ is prime and stop.
3) Check if $N$ is of the form $p^{\alpha}, \alpha>1$ by the subroutine Prime-power.
4) Pick an element $x \in N$.
5) If $x \mid N$, return $x$.
6) Use quantum order finding algorithm to find the order of $x$.
7) If $\operatorname{ord}(x)$ is odd then abort.
8) If $x^{\frac{\operatorname{ord}(x)}{2}}=-\mathbf{1}(\bmod N)$ then abort.
9) Get a nontrivial square root of $\mathbf{1}(\bmod N)$, by setting $y \leftarrow x^{\frac{\operatorname{ord}(x)}{2}}$.
10) Use Euclid's G.C.D. algorithm to find the greatest common divisor of $(y-1, N)$ and $(y+1, N)$. Return the nontrivial numbers.

Output: With high probability it gives a divisor of $N$ or tells if $N$ is prime.

Subroutine: Prime-power
Input: Integer N.

1) Compute $y=\log _{2} N$.
2) For all $i \in\left\{2,3, \ldots, \log _{2} N\right\}$ compute $x_{i}=\frac{y}{i}$.
3) Find $u_{i}<2^{x_{i}}<u_{i}+1$ for all $i \in\left\{2,3, \ldots, \log _{2} N\right\}$.
4) Check if $u_{i} \mid N$ or $u_{i}+1 \mid N$ for all $i \in\left\{2,3, \ldots, \log _{2} N\right\}$. If any one of the numbers divide $N$, say $u$, then return $u$. Else fail.

Output: If $N$ is a prime power of $p$, the subroutine "prime-power" returns $p$. If it is not a prime power it fails to produce any output. In $O\left((\log N)^{3}\right)$ steps it terminates. The most costly operation in the algorithm is the order finding algorithm. Since the order finding takes $O\left((\log N)^{4}\right)$ time, the time taken by this factoring algorithm is also $O\left((\log N)^{4}\right)$.

Remark 6.1.9 Step 1) just checks if the number $N$ is divisible by 2 . Step 2) checks if the number $N$ is prime and Step 3) if $N$ is a prime power. So after Step 3) Lemma 6.1.1 is applicable.

Probability of success in Shor's algorithm is greater than probability of success in order finding multiplied by the probability that the chosen element $x$ is not in the set $A$, of Lemma 6.1.1. Running time of the algorithm is $O\left((\log N)^{4}\right)$. Thus, by running the algorithm only a constant number of times we can get probability of success greater than $1-\epsilon$ for any fixed $\epsilon>0$.

Exercise 6.1.10 Find a randomized polynomial time algorithm for factoring an integer $N$, if $\varphi(N)$ is known.

## Lecture 7

## Quantum Error Correcting Codes

### 7.1 Knill Laflamme Theorem

The mathematical theory of communication of messages through a quantum information channel is based on the following three basic principles.

1) Messages can be encoded as states and transmitted through quantum channels.
2) The output state may not be the same as the input state due to presence of noise in the channel.
3) There is a collection of "good" states which when transmitted through the noisy channel leads to output states from which the input state can be recovered with no error or with a small margin of error.

The aim is to identify the set of good states for a given model of the noisy channel and to give the decoding procedure.


Figure 7.1: A model of noisy quantum channel

Let $\mathcal{H}$ be a finite dimentional complex Hilbert space. We assume that there is a linear space $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{H})$, called the error space such that
for any input state $\rho$ on $\mathcal{H}$ the output state $T(\rho)$ has always the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
T(\rho)=\sum_{j} L_{j} \rho L_{j}^{\dagger} \tag{7.1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $L_{j}$ belongs to $\mathcal{E}$ for every $j$ (See Figure 7.1). If the same input state is transmitted again the operators $L_{j}$ may be completely different. But they always come from the error space $\mathcal{E}$ and satisfy the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Tr}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{k} L_{j}^{\dagger} L_{j}\right) \rho=1 \tag{7.1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $L_{j}$ 's may or may not depend on the density matrix $\rho$ which is transmitted through the noisy channel.

Definition 7.1.3 A state $\rho$ is said to have its support in a subspace $S \subset \mathcal{H}$ if $\operatorname{Tr} \rho E^{S}=1$ where $E^{S}$ is the orthogonal projection on $S$.

This means if we choose an orthonormal basis $e_{1}, \ldots e_{k}, e_{k+1}, \ldots, e_{N}$ for $\mathcal{H}$ such that $e_{1}, e_{2}, \ldots, e_{k}$ is an orthonormal basis for $S$ then the matrix of $\rho$ in this basis has the form $\left[\begin{array}{l|l}\tilde{\rho} & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0\end{array}\right]$ where $\tilde{\rho}$ is a $k \times k$ matrix. To recover the input state at the output of the channel we apply a recovery operator $R$ of the form

$$
\begin{aligned}
R(T(\rho)) & =\sum_{j} M_{j} T(\rho) M_{j}^{\dagger} \\
\sum_{j} M_{j}^{\dagger} M_{j} & =I
\end{aligned}
$$

It would be desirable to have $R(T(\rho))=\rho$ for all $\rho$, whenever the $L$ 's are from $\mathcal{E}$ and they act on $\rho$ as in (7.1.1). Of course this is too ambitious. We would like to achieve this pleasant situation at least for all $\rho$ with support in some 'large' subspace $\mathcal{C} \subset \mathcal{H}$. Then we can encode messages in terms of states from $\mathcal{C}$ and recover them with the help of a decoding operation $R$. The idea is formalized in the following definition.

Definition 7.1.4 A subspace $\mathcal{C} \subset \mathcal{H}$ is called a $\mathcal{E}$-correcting quantum code, if there exist operators $M_{1}, M_{2}, \ldots, M_{k}$, such that for every $\rho$ with support in $\mathcal{C}$ and any $L_{1}, L_{2}, \ldots, L_{l} \in \mathcal{E}$, with $\operatorname{Tr}\left(\sum_{j} L_{j}^{\dagger} L_{j}\right) \rho=1$, one has $\sum_{i, j} M_{i} L_{j} \rho L_{j}^{\dagger} M_{i}^{\dagger}=\rho$.

Remark 7.1.5 Now consider $|u\rangle \in \mathcal{C}$. Then $|u\rangle\langle u|$ has support in $\mathcal{C}$. Consider the equations

$$
\sum M_{i} L_{j}|u\rangle\langle u| L_{j}^{\dagger} M_{i}^{\dagger}=|u\rangle\langle u|
$$

and

$$
\langle u|\left(\sum_{j} L_{j}^{\dagger} L_{j}\right)|u\rangle=1 .
$$

Choose any $|v\rangle \in \mathcal{H}$ such that $\langle u \mid v\rangle=0$. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\sum_{i, j}\left|\langle v| M_{i} L_{j}\right| u\right\rangle\left.\right|^{2}=0 . \tag{7.1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is true if and only if $\langle v| M_{i} L_{j}|u\rangle=0$ for all $|v\rangle \in\{|u\rangle\}^{\perp}$ and every $i, j$. Thus,

$$
M_{i} L_{j}|u\rangle=c(u)|u\rangle \quad \text { for all }|u\rangle \in \mathcal{C} .
$$

$M_{i} L_{j}$ is an operator and $\mathcal{C}$ is a subspace. Hence this can happen if and only if

$$
\left.M_{i} L\right|_{\mathcal{C}}=\left.\lambda_{i}(L) I\right|_{\mathcal{C}} \text { for all } L \in \mathcal{E}
$$

We state this as a proposition.

Proposition 7.1.7 $A$ subspace $\mathcal{C} \subset \mathcal{H}$ is an $\mathcal{E}$-correcting quantum code if and only if there exist operators $M_{1}, M_{2}, \ldots M_{k}$ in $\mathcal{H}$, such that, $\sum_{i} M_{i}^{\dagger} M_{i}=I$ and $\left.M_{i} L\right|_{\mathcal{C}}=\left.\lambda_{i}(L) I\right|_{\mathcal{C}}$ for all $L \in \mathcal{E}$.

We would like to have a characterization of the quantum code $\mathcal{C}$ without involving the $M_{i}$ 's. That is, a condition entirely in terms of $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{E}$. This is achieved by the following remarkable criterion due to Knill and Laflamme.

Theorem 7.1.8 (Knill and Laflamme) A subspace $\mathcal{C}$ with an orthonormal basis $\psi_{0}, \psi_{1}, \ldots, \psi_{k-1}$ is an $\mathcal{E}$-correcting quantum code if and only if

1. $\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| L_{1}^{\dagger} L_{2}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle=0 \quad$ for all $i \neq j$, and all $L_{1}, L_{2} \in \mathcal{E}$;
2. $\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| L_{1}^{\dagger} L_{2}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle$ is independent of $i=0,1, \ldots, k-1$.

Proof Necessity: By the Proposition 7.1 .7 we know that there must exist recovery operators $R_{1}, \ldots, R_{l}$ satisfying the equations $\sum_{i} R_{i}^{\dagger} R_{i}=I$ and $R_{i} L \psi=\lambda_{i}(L) \psi, \quad \psi \in \mathcal{C}, L \in \mathcal{E}$. Let $L_{1}, L_{2} \in \mathcal{E}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| L_{1}^{\dagger} L_{2}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle & =\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| L_{1}^{\dagger}\left(\sum_{r} R_{r}^{\dagger} R_{r}\right) L_{2}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{r} \overline{\lambda_{r}\left(L_{1}\right)} \lambda_{r}\left(L_{2}\right)\left\langle\psi_{i} \mid \psi_{j}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{r} \overline{\lambda_{r}\left(L_{1}\right)} \lambda_{r}\left(L_{2}\right) \delta_{i j}
\end{aligned}
$$

Sufficiency: Let the conditions (1) and (2) hold. Consider the subspaces $\mathcal{E} \psi_{0}, \mathcal{E} \psi_{1}, \ldots, \mathcal{E} \psi_{k-1}$. It can be verified that the correspondence $L \psi_{i} \rightarrow L \psi_{j}$, for all $L \in \mathcal{E}$ is a scalar product preserving map. So we can write the following table.

| $\psi_{0}$ | $\psi_{1}$ | $\cdots$ | $\psi_{j}$ | $\cdots$ | $\psi_{k-1}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathcal{E} \psi_{0}$ | $\mathcal{E} \psi_{1}$ | $\cdots$ | $\mathcal{E} \psi_{j}$ | $\cdots$ | $\mathcal{E} \psi_{k-1}$ |


| $\varphi_{0}^{0}$ | $\varphi_{1}^{0}$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{j}^{0}$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{k-1}^{0}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\vdots$ |
| $\varphi_{0}^{l-1}$ | $\varphi_{1}^{l-1}$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{j}^{l-1}$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{k-1}^{l-1}$ |

Here $\varphi_{0}^{0}, \varphi_{0}^{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{0}^{l-1}$ is an orthonormal basis for the subspace $\mathcal{E} \psi_{0}$. The $\operatorname{map} L \psi_{0} \rightarrow L \psi_{j}$, for any $L \in \mathcal{E}$, is a unitary isomorphism between the subspaces $\mathcal{E} \psi_{0}$ and $\mathcal{E} \psi_{j}$. So $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{E} \psi_{j}=l$ for all $j \in\{0,1, \ldots k-1\}$ and there exists a global unitary operator $U_{j}$, satisfying $U_{j} \varphi_{0}^{i}=\varphi_{j}^{i}$, $i=0,1, \ldots, l-1$. Since by the first condition $\left\langle L_{1} \psi_{i} \mid L_{2} \psi_{j}\right\rangle=0$ for $L_{1}, L_{2} \in \mathcal{E}$ and $i \neq j$, the subspaces $\mathcal{E} \psi_{j} j=0,1, \ldots k-1$ are mutually orthogonal. Let $E_{i}$ be the projection on the span of the $i^{\text {th }}$ row in the array $\left\{\varphi_{j}^{i}\right\}$. Now we define a unitary operator $V^{(i)}$ satisfying $V^{(i)} \varphi_{j}^{i}=\psi_{j}$ for $i=0,1, \ldots, l-1$.

Let $R_{i}=V^{(i)} E_{i}$ for $i=0,1, \ldots, l-1$ and $R_{l}=E_{l}$, the projection on $\left\{\varphi_{j}^{i}, 0 \leq i \leq l-1,0 \leq j \leq k-1\right\}^{\perp}$. It can be verified that $\sum_{i=0}^{l} R_{i}^{\dagger} R_{i}=I$.

Now consider any $\psi=c_{0} \psi_{0}+c_{1} \psi_{1}+\cdots+c_{k-1} \psi_{k-1}$ in $\mathcal{C}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
L \psi & =c_{0} L \psi_{0}+c_{1} L \psi_{1}+\cdots+c_{k-1} L \psi_{k-1}, \\
& =c_{0} L \psi_{0}+c_{1} U_{1} L \psi_{0}+\cdots+c_{k-1} U_{k-1} L \psi_{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

Let

$$
L \psi_{0}=\alpha_{0}(L) \varphi_{0}^{0}+\alpha_{1}(L) \varphi_{0}^{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{l-1} \varphi_{0}^{l-1}
$$

Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
U_{j} L \psi_{0} & =\alpha_{0}(L) \varphi_{j}^{0}+\alpha_{1}(L) \varphi_{j}^{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{l-1} \varphi_{j}^{l-1} \\
\Rightarrow E_{i} U_{j} L \psi_{0} & =\alpha_{i}(L) \varphi_{j}^{i} \\
\Rightarrow V^{(i)} E_{i} U_{j} L \psi_{0} & =\alpha_{i}(L) \psi_{j} .
\end{aligned}
$$

That is,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{i} U_{j} L \psi_{0}=\alpha_{i}(L) \psi_{j} \text { for } i=0,1, \ldots, l-1, \\
& E_{l} U_{j} L \psi_{0}=0=R_{l} U_{j} L \psi_{0} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus we have,

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{i} L \psi & =c_{0} \alpha_{i}(L) \psi_{0}+c_{1} \alpha_{i}(L) \psi_{1}+\cdots+c_{k-1} \alpha_{i}(L) \psi_{k-1} \\
& =\alpha_{i}(L) \psi \text { for } i \in\{0,1, \ldots, l-1\}, \text { and } \\
R_{l} L \psi & =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

That is, $\left.R_{i} L\right|_{\mathcal{C}}=\left.\alpha_{i}(L) I\right|_{\mathcal{C}}$, where $\alpha_{l}(L)=0$.

Example 7.1.9 Let $G$ be a finite group with identity element $e$ and $\mathcal{H}=L^{2}(G)$, the Hilbert space of functions on $G$ with

$$
\left\langle f_{1}, f_{2}\right\rangle=\sum_{x \in G} \overline{f_{1}(x)} f_{2}(x)
$$

Let $E \subset G$ be called the error set and $C \subset G$ the code set. Let $\mathcal{E}=$ $\operatorname{lin}\left\{L_{x} \mid x \in E\right\}$, where $\left(L_{a} f\right)(x)=f\left(a^{-1} x\right)$, lin denotes linear span and $\mathcal{C}=\operatorname{lin}\left\{1_{\{c\}} \mid c \in C\right\}$. It can be verified that $L_{a} 1_{\{b\}}=1_{\{a b\}}$.

If $c_{1} \neq c_{2}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle 1_{\left\{c_{1}\right\}}, L_{x}^{\dagger} L_{y} 1_{\left\{c_{2}\right\}}\right\rangle= & \left\langle 1_{\left\{c_{1}\right\}}, 1_{\left\{x^{-1} y c_{2}\right\}}\right\rangle \\
= & 0 \text { if } x^{-1} y c_{2} \neq c_{1} \\
& \quad \text { or } x^{-1} y \neq c_{1} c_{2}^{-1} \text { or } E^{-1} E \cap C C^{-1}=\{e\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Also,

$$
\left\langle 1_{\{c\}}, L_{x}^{\dagger} L_{y} 1_{\{c\}}\right\rangle= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } x=y \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Thus $\left\langle 1_{\{c\}}, L_{x}^{\dagger} L_{y} 1_{\{c\}}\right\rangle$ is independent of $c$. Hence by Knill-Laflamme theorem we see that $\mathcal{C}$ is an $\mathcal{E}$-correcting quantum code if $E^{-1} E \cap$ $C C^{-1}=\{e\}$.


Figure 7.2: A model of noisy classical channel.

Consider the model of a noisy classical channel shown in Figure 7.2. If $E^{-1} E \cap C C^{-1}=\{e\}$ then for all distinct $c_{1}, c_{2}, E c_{1} \cap E c_{2}=\emptyset$. So $C$ is an $E$-correcting classical code. If the output falls in the set $E c$ the message is decoded as $c$.

For example, set $G=\mathbb{Z}_{2}^{3}$, where $\mathbb{Z}_{2}=\{0,1\}$ with addition $\bmod 2$. Let the error set $E$ be $\{100,010,001\}$ and the code set $C$ be $\{000,111\}$. Then $E-E=\{000,110,011,101\}$ and $C-C=C=\{000,111\}$ implying $(E-E) \cap(C-C)=\{000\}$.

In order to formulate our next proposition we introduce some notation. Let $A$ be a finite abelian group with operation + , null element 0 and character group $\hat{A}$. In the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}=L^{2}(A)$ of complex valued functions on $A$ we define the unitary operators $U_{a}, a \in A, V_{\alpha}, \alpha \in \hat{A}$ by $\left(U_{a} f\right)(x)=f(x+a),\left(V_{\alpha} f\right)(x)=\alpha(x) f(x)$. Then we have the Weyl commutation rules:

$$
U_{a} U_{b}=U_{a+b}, V_{\alpha} V_{\beta}=V_{\alpha \beta}, U_{a} V_{\alpha}=\alpha(a) V_{\alpha} U_{a} .
$$

Let $E \subset A, F \subset \hat{A}$ and let

$$
\mathcal{E}(E, F)=\operatorname{lin}\left\{U_{a} V_{\alpha} \mid a \in E, \alpha \in \hat{F}\right\} .
$$

Our aim is to construct a quantum code which is $\mathcal{E}(E, F)$-correcting by using subgroups $C_{1} \subset C_{2} \subset A$. To this end, for any subgroup $C \subset A$, we define

$$
C^{\perp}=\{\alpha \mid \alpha \in \hat{A}, \alpha(x)=1, \text { for all } x \in C\} .
$$

$C^{\perp}$ is called the annihilator of $C$. We have $C_{1}^{\perp} \supset C_{2}^{\perp}$. Clearly $C_{1}^{\perp}, C_{2}^{\perp}$ are subgroups of the character group $\hat{A}$ under multiplication. Suppose

$$
\begin{aligned}
&(E-E) \cap C_{2}=\{0\} \\
& F^{-1} F \cap C_{1}^{\perp} \subseteq C_{2}^{\perp},
\end{aligned}
$$

and let $S$ be the cross section for $C_{2} / C_{1}$ in the sense that $S \subset C_{2}$ and $C_{2}=\cup_{a \in S} C_{1}+a$ is a coset decomposition (or partition) of $C_{2}$ by $C_{1}$-cosets. Note that

$$
S^{\perp} \triangleq\{\alpha \mid \alpha \in \hat{A}, \alpha(a)=1 \text { for all } a \in S\}
$$

is a subgroup of $\hat{A}$. One may view $C_{2}$ as a classical $E$-correcting group code in $A$. Define

$$
\psi_{a}(x)=\left(\# C_{1}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}} 1_{C_{1}+a}(x), a \in S
$$

Theorem 7.1.10 $\operatorname{lin}\left\{\psi_{a} \mid a \in S\right\}$ is an $\mathcal{E}(E, F)$-correcting quantum code of dimension $\frac{\# C_{2}}{\# C_{1}}$.

Proof Note that $\left\langle\psi_{a_{1}} \mid \psi_{a_{2}}\right\rangle=\delta_{a_{1} a_{2}}, a_{1}, a_{2} \in S$. It is enough to verify Knill-Laflamme conditions for

$$
L_{1}=U_{a_{1}} V_{\alpha_{1}}, L_{2}=U_{a_{2}} V_{\alpha_{2}}, a_{1}, a_{2} \in E, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2} \in F
$$

Then by the Weyl commutation rules we have

$$
L_{1}^{\dagger} L_{2}=\alpha_{1}\left(a_{2}-a_{1}\right) U_{a_{2}-a_{1}} V_{\alpha_{1}^{-1} \alpha_{2}}, a_{2}-a_{1} \in E-E, \alpha_{1}^{-1} \alpha_{2} \in F^{-1} F
$$

Let $a_{1}, a_{2} \in S, a_{1} \neq a_{2}$. We have for $a \in E-E, \alpha \in F^{-1} F$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle\psi_{a_{1}}\right| U_{a} V_{\alpha}\left|\psi_{a_{2}}\right\rangle=\left(\# C_{1}\right)^{-1} \sum_{x \in A} 1_{C_{1}+a_{1}+a}(x) \alpha(x) 1_{C_{1}+a_{2}}(x) \tag{7.1.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $x$-th term in the summation on the right side of (7.1.11) is not equal to zero only if $x \in\left(C_{1}+a_{1}+a\right) \cap\left(C_{1}+a_{2}\right)$, which implies the existence of $x_{1}, x_{2} \in C_{1}$ such that

$$
\begin{align*}
x_{1}+a_{1}+a & =x_{2}+a_{2} \\
\Longrightarrow a & =\left(x_{2}-x_{1}\right)+a_{2}-a_{1} . \tag{7.1.12}
\end{align*}
$$

In (7.1.12) $a-\left(x_{1}-x_{2}\right)$ belongs to $C_{2}$ whereas $a_{2}-a_{1}$ belongs to $E-E$. By hypothesis $(E-E) \cap C_{2}=\{0\}$. Thus the $x$-th term vanishes if $a \neq 0$.

Now consider the case $a=0$. Then for $a_{1}, a_{2} \in S, a_{1} \neq a_{2}, C_{1}+a_{1}$ and $C_{1}+a_{2}$ are two disjoint cosets and therefore the right hand side of (7.1.11) vanishes once again. In other words

$$
\left\langle\psi_{a_{1}}\right| U_{a} V_{\alpha}\left|\psi_{a_{2}}\right\rangle=0 \text { for all } a_{1} \neq a_{2}, a \in E-E, \alpha \in F^{-1} F .
$$

Now let us consider the case $a_{1}=a_{2}=b \in S$. Then the left hand side of (7.1.11) is equal to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\# C_{1}\right)^{-1} \sum_{x \in A} 1_{C_{1}+b+a}(x) 1_{C_{1}+b}(x) \alpha(x) . \tag{7.1.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $x$-th term is not equal to zero only if

$$
\begin{aligned}
x \in\left(C_{1}+b+a\right) \cap\left(C_{1}+b\right) & \Longrightarrow\left(C_{1}+a\right) \cap C_{1} \neq \emptyset \\
& \Longrightarrow a \in C_{1} \cap(E-E) \\
& \Longrightarrow a=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus the expression (7.1.13) vanishes if $a \neq 0$. If $a=0$ then (7.1.13) is equal to

$$
\left(\# C_{1}\right)^{-1} \sum_{x \in A} 1_{C_{1}+b}(x) \alpha(x)=\left(\# C_{1}\right)^{-1} \alpha(b) \sum_{x \in C_{1}} \alpha(x) .
$$

If $\alpha \notin C_{1}^{\perp}$ then, $\alpha$ is a nontrivial character for $C_{1}$ and by Schur orthogonality the right hand side vanishes. If $\alpha \in C_{1}^{\perp}$, then

$$
\alpha \in C_{1}^{\perp} \cap F^{-1} F \Longrightarrow \alpha \in C_{2}^{\perp} \Longrightarrow \alpha(b)=1 .
$$

Thus the expression (7.1.13) is independent of $b$. In other words, KnillLaflamme conditions are fulfilled for the orthonormal set $\left\{\psi_{a} \mid a \in S\right\}$.

Theorem 7.1.14 Let $C_{1} \subset C_{2} \subset A$ be subgroups. Consider the subgroups $C_{2}^{\perp} \subset C_{1}^{\perp} \subset \hat{A}$ and the coset decomposition $C_{1}^{\perp}=\cup_{\alpha \in \tilde{S}} C_{2}^{\perp} \alpha$ with respect to the cross section $\tilde{S}$. Define

$$
\psi_{\alpha}=\left(\# C_{2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}} 1_{C_{2}} \alpha, \alpha \in \tilde{S} .
$$

Let $E \subset A, F \subset \hat{A}$ be such that $(E-E) \cap C_{2}=\{0\}, F^{-1} F \cap C_{1}^{\perp} \subset C_{2}^{\perp}$. Then $\operatorname{lin}\left\{\psi_{\alpha} \mid \alpha \in \tilde{S}\right\}$ is an $\mathcal{E}(E, F)$-correcting quantum code of dimension $\left(\# C_{2}\right) /\left(\# C_{1}\right)$.

Proof Let $b \in E-E, \beta \in F^{-1} F, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2} \in \tilde{S}$. Then

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left\langle\psi_{\alpha_{1}}\right| U_{b} V_{\beta}\left|\psi_{\alpha_{2}}\right\rangle= \\
& \quad\left(\# C_{2}\right)^{-1} \sum_{x} 1_{C_{2}+b}(x) \overline{\alpha_{1}(x)} \alpha_{2}(x) 1_{C_{2}}(x) \beta(x) \alpha_{1}(b) \tag{7.1.15}
\end{align*}
$$

If the $x$-th term in the right hand side of equation (7.1.15) is not equal to zero, then $C_{2}+b \cap C_{2} \neq \emptyset \Longrightarrow b \in C_{2} \cap(E-E) \Longrightarrow b=0$. Thus the right hand side of equation (7.1.15) vanishes whenever $b \neq 0$ for any $\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}$ in $\tilde{S}$. Let $b=0$. Then the right hand side of equation (7.1.15) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\# C_{2}\right)^{-1} \sum_{x \in C_{2}} \overline{\alpha_{1}(x)} \alpha_{2}(x) \beta(x) . \tag{7.1.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\alpha_{1}=\alpha_{2}=\alpha \in \tilde{S}$ this becomes $\left(\# C_{2}\right)^{-1} \sum_{x \in C_{2}} \beta(x)$ which is independent of $\alpha \in \tilde{S}$. So we consider the case $b=0, \alpha_{1} \neq \alpha_{2}, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2} \in \tilde{S}$. Then the expression (7.1.16) is not equal to zero only if $\overline{\alpha_{1}} \alpha_{2} \beta \in C_{2}^{\perp}$. This implies $\beta \in C_{1}^{\perp} \cap F^{-1} F$. So by hypothesis $\beta$ is in $C_{2}^{\perp}$. This implies $\overline{\alpha_{1}} \alpha_{2} \in C_{2}^{\perp}$. i.e., $\alpha_{1}$ and $\alpha_{2}$ lie in the same coset of $C_{2}^{\perp}$ in $C_{1}^{\perp}$. This is impossible. So expression (7.1.16) must be equal to zero. In other words Knill-Laflamme conditions are fulfilled.

### 7.2 Some Definitions

### 7.2.1 Invariants

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an $\mathcal{E}$ correcting quantum code with recovery operators $R_{1}, \ldots, R_{l}$. Suppose $U$ is a unitary operator such that $U \mathcal{E} U^{-1} \subseteq \mathcal{E}$. Define, $S_{j}=U R_{j} U^{-1}$. We have $R_{j} L \psi=\lambda_{j}(L) \psi$, where $\psi \in \mathcal{C}$ and $L \in \mathcal{E}$. Since $\tilde{L}=U^{-1} L U$ is an element of $\mathcal{E}$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{j} L U \psi & =U R_{j} U^{-1} L U \psi \\
& =U R_{j} \tilde{L} \psi \\
& =\lambda_{j}(\tilde{L}) U \psi
\end{aligned}
$$

In other words, if $\mathcal{C}$ is an error correcting quantum code with recovery operators $R_{1}, R_{2}, \ldots, R_{l}$ then for any unitary $U$, satisfying $U \mathcal{E} U^{*} \subseteq \mathcal{E}$, $U(\mathcal{C})$ is also $\mathcal{E}$-correcting with recovery operators $S_{1}, S_{2}, \ldots S_{k}$, where $S_{j}=U R_{j} U^{-1}$ for all $j$.

Definition 7.2.1 Two $\mathcal{E}$-correcting quantum $\operatorname{codes} \mathcal{C}_{1}, \mathcal{C}_{2}$, are said to be equivalent if and only if there exists a unitary operator $U$, satisfying $U \mathcal{E} U^{*} \subseteq \mathcal{E}$, such that $U\left(\mathcal{C}_{1}\right)=\mathcal{C}_{2}$.

Remark 7.2.2 Finding invariants for the equivalence of $\mathcal{E}$-correcting quantum codes is an important problem in the development of the subject.

Let $A$ be a finite set, called an alphabet, of cardinality $N$. An element $\boldsymbol{x}$ in $A^{n}$ is called a word of length $n$. A word $\boldsymbol{x}$ is also written as $\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) . C \subset A^{n}$ is called an $(n, M, d)_{A}$ code if, $\# C=M$ and

$$
\min _{\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in C, \boldsymbol{x} \neq \boldsymbol{y}} d(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y})=d
$$

Here, $d(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y})=\#\left\{i \mid x_{i} \neq y_{i}\right\}$. This is also known as the Hamming distance between $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$.

If $A$ is an abelian group with + as its addition and 0 its null element then

$$
w(\boldsymbol{x}) \triangleq \#\left\{i \mid x_{i} \neq 0\right\}, \boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)
$$

is called the weight of $\boldsymbol{x}$. If $C \subset A^{n}$ is a subgroup with

$$
d=\min _{\boldsymbol{x} \neq 0, \boldsymbol{x} \in C} w(\boldsymbol{x}), \# C=M,
$$

then $C$ is called an $(n, M, d)_{A}$ group code, and it is denoted by $\langle n, M, d\rangle_{A}$. If $A$ is the additive group of a finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ of $q$ elements ( $q=p^{m}$, for some prime $p$ ) and $C \subset \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ is a linear subspace of the $n$-dimensional vector space $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ and $d=\min _{\boldsymbol{x} \neq \boldsymbol{0}} w(\boldsymbol{x})$, then $C$ is called a linear code over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ with minimum distance $d$ and written as $[n, k, d]_{q}$ code, where $k=\operatorname{dim} C$. When $q=2$, it is simply called an $[n, k, d]$ code (binary code).

An $\langle n, M, d\rangle_{A}$ code is $t$-error correcting when $t=\left\lfloor\frac{d-1}{2}\right\rfloor$.

### 7.2.2 What is a $t$-error correcting quantum code?

Let $\mathcal{G}$ be a Hilbert space of finite dimension and $\mathcal{H}=\mathcal{G}^{\otimes^{n}}$ its $n$-fold tensor product. A typical example is $\mathcal{G}=\mathbb{C}^{2}$, so that $\mathcal{H}$ is an $n$-qubit Hilbert space. Consider all operators in $\mathcal{H}$ of the form

$$
X=X_{1} \otimes X_{2} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{n}
$$

where $\#\left\{i \mid X_{i} \neq I\right\} \leq t$.

Denote by $\mathcal{E}_{t}$ the linear span of all such operators. An element $X \in \mathcal{E}_{t}$ is called an error operator of strength at most $t$. An $\mathcal{E}_{t}$-correcting quantum code $\mathcal{C} \subset \mathcal{H}$ is called a $t$-error correcting quantum code.

Remark 7.2.3 In an $n$-qubit quantum computer, if errors affect at most $t$ wires among the $n$ wires, they can be corrected by a $t$-error correcting quantum code.

### 7.2.3 A good basis for $\mathcal{E}_{t}$

We now construct a "good basis" for $\mathcal{E}_{t} \subset \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{H})$. Suppose $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{G}=N$. Consider any abelian group $A$ of cardinality $N$ and identify $\mathcal{G}$ with $L^{2}(A)$. We define the unitary operators $U_{a}, V_{\alpha}$ and $W_{a, \alpha}$ as follows

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(U_{a} f\right)(x)=f(x+a) \text { where } a \in A, \\
& \left(V_{\alpha} f\right)(x)=\alpha(x) f(x) \text { where } f \in L^{2}(A), \alpha \in \hat{A}, \text { and } W_{a, \alpha}=U_{a} V_{\alpha} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
W_{(a, \alpha)} W_{(b, \beta)} & =\overline{\alpha(b)} W_{a+b, \alpha \beta} \\
\text { and } \operatorname{Tr} W_{(a, \alpha)}^{\dagger} W_{(b, \beta)} & =\left(\delta_{a, b} \delta_{\alpha, \beta}\right) N .
\end{aligned}
$$

The family $\left\{W_{(a, \alpha)} \mid(a, \alpha) \in A \times \hat{A}\right\}$ is irreducible and the set

$$
\left\{\left.\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} W_{(a, \alpha)} \right\rvert\,(a, \alpha) \in A \times \hat{A}\right\}
$$

is an orthonormal basis for the Hilbert space $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{G})$ with scalar product $\langle X, Y\rangle=\operatorname{Tr} X^{\dagger} Y, X, Y \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{G})$. For $(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \in A^{n} \times \hat{A}^{n}\left(\cong(A \times \hat{A})^{n}\right)$ define $W_{(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})}=W_{\left(a_{1}, \alpha_{1}\right)} \otimes W_{\left(a_{2}, \alpha_{2}\right)} \otimes \cdots \otimes W_{\left(a_{n}, \alpha_{n}\right)}$, so that

$$
W_{(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})} W_{(\boldsymbol{b}, \boldsymbol{\beta})}=\prod_{i=1}^{n} \overline{\alpha_{i}\left(b_{i}\right)} W_{(\boldsymbol{a}+\boldsymbol{b}, \boldsymbol{\alpha} \boldsymbol{\beta})}
$$

and

$$
\left\{\left.\frac{1}{N^{\frac{n}{2}}} W_{(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})} \right\rvert\,(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \in A^{n} \times \hat{A}^{n}\right\}
$$

is an orthonormal basis for $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{H})=\mathcal{B}\left(\mathcal{G}^{\otimes^{n}}\right)$. Define

$$
w(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})=\#\left\{i \mid\left(a_{i}, \alpha_{i}\right) \neq(0,1)\right\}
$$

the weight of $(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})$ in the abelian group $(A \times \hat{A})^{n}$.

Then

$$
\left\{W_{(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})} \mid w(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq t\right\}
$$

is a linear basis for the subspace $\mathcal{E}_{t}$.
A subspace $\mathcal{C} \subset \mathcal{G}^{\otimes^{n}}$ is called a quantum code of minimum distance $d$, if $\mathcal{C}$ has an orthonormal basis $\psi_{1}, \psi_{2}, \ldots, \psi_{k}$ satisfying

1. $\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| W_{(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})}\left|\psi_{j}\right\rangle=0, i \neq j, w(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq d$,
2. $\left\langle\psi_{i}\right| W_{(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle$ is independent of $i$ whenever $w(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq d$,
3. Either condition (1) or condition (2) is false, for some (a, $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ ) with $w(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})=d+1$.

Such a quantum code is $\left\lfloor\frac{d-1}{2}\right\rfloor$-error correcting. We call it an $\llbracket n, k, d \rrbracket_{A}$ quantum code.

### 7.3 Examples

### 7.3.1 A generalized Shor code

We begin with a few definitions. Let $A$ be a finite abelian group with binary operation + and identity element 0 . Let $\hat{A}$ denote its character group. Let $\mathcal{H}$ be the Hilbert space $L^{2}(A)^{\otimes^{n}}$. Let $U_{\boldsymbol{a}}$ and $V_{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ denote the Weyl operators. Let $C_{n} \subset A^{n}$ be a $t$-error correcting $\left(d\left(C_{n}\right) \geq 2 t+1\right)$ group code of length $n$ with alphabet $A$. Let $D_{n, m} \subset\left(\hat{C}_{n}\right)^{m}$ be a $t$-error correcting group code with alphabet $\hat{C}_{n}$ of length $m$.

An element in $D_{n, m}$ is denoted by $\chi$. Sometimes we also denote by $\chi$ the $m$-tuple $\chi_{1}, \chi_{2}, \ldots, \chi_{m}$, where each $\chi_{i}$ is in $\hat{C_{n}}$. Define

$$
f_{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}(\boldsymbol{x})= \begin{cases}\# C_{n}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\boldsymbol{x}) & \text { if } \boldsymbol{x} \in C_{n} ; \\ 0 & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Let $F_{\boldsymbol{\chi}}=f_{\chi_{1}} \otimes f_{\chi_{2}} \otimes \cdots \otimes f_{\chi_{m}}$, where $\boldsymbol{\chi}$ is in $D_{n, m}$.
Theorem 7.3.1 $\left\{F_{\boldsymbol{\chi}} \mid \boldsymbol{\chi} \in D_{n, m}\right\}$ is a t-error correcting quantum code in $L^{2}(A)^{\otimes^{m n}} \cong L^{2}\left(A^{m n}\right)$.

Proof Let $(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \in A^{m n} \times \hat{A}^{m n}$ such that $w(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq 2 t$. We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\langle F_{\boldsymbol{\beta}}\right| U_{\boldsymbol{a}} V_{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}\left|F_{\boldsymbol{\gamma}}\right\rangle=\sum_{\boldsymbol{x} \in A^{m n}} \prod_{j=1}^{m} \bar{f}_{\beta_{j}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}^{(j)}-\boldsymbol{a}^{(j)}\right) f_{\gamma_{j}}\left(\boldsymbol{x}^{(j)}\right) \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\boldsymbol{x}) . \tag{7.3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $w(\boldsymbol{a}) \leq 2 t$ in $A^{m n}$ and $w(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq 2 t$ in $\hat{A}^{m n}$.
Case 1: Let $\boldsymbol{a} \neq 0$. Then $\boldsymbol{a}^{(j)} \neq 0$ for some $j=j_{0}$, and $w(\boldsymbol{a}) \leq 2 t$ implies $w\left(\boldsymbol{a}^{\left(j_{0}\right)}\right) \leq 2 t$. Then $C_{n}+\boldsymbol{a}^{\left(j_{0}\right)} \cap C_{n}=\emptyset$. So every summand in the right hand side of equation (7.3.2) vanishes.
Case 2: Let $\boldsymbol{a}=0$. Then the right hand side of equation (7.3.2) reduces to

$$
\frac{1}{\# C_{n}} \sum_{\boldsymbol{x} \in C_{n}^{m}} \overline{\boldsymbol{\beta}}(\boldsymbol{x}) \gamma(\boldsymbol{x}) \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\boldsymbol{x})
$$

Let $\boldsymbol{\beta} \neq \boldsymbol{\gamma}, \boldsymbol{\beta}, \boldsymbol{\gamma} \in D_{n, m}$. Then $\overline{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \boldsymbol{\gamma} \in D_{n, m}$ (a group code), and $w(\overline{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \gamma) \geq 2 t+1$. Since $w(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \leq 2 t,\left.\boldsymbol{\alpha}\right|_{C_{n}^{m}}$ has weight $\leq 2 t$. So $\left.\overline{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \boldsymbol{\gamma} \boldsymbol{\alpha}\right|_{C_{n}^{m}}$ is nontrivial. By Schur orthogonality relations the right hand side of equation (7.3.2) is equal to 0 .

We now consider the case when $\boldsymbol{\beta}=\boldsymbol{\gamma}$. Then the right hand side of equation (7.3.2) reduces to $\frac{1}{\# C_{n}} \sum_{\boldsymbol{x} \in C_{n}^{m}} \boldsymbol{\alpha}(\boldsymbol{x})$ which is independent of $\boldsymbol{\beta}$.

Thus the Knill-Laflamme conditions are fulfilled.
7.3.2 Specialization to $A=\{0,1\}, m=3, n=3$

Design of a 9-qubit, 1 error correcting, 2-dimensional code.

$$
\begin{aligned}
C_{3} & =\{000,111\} \\
\hat{C}_{3} & \text { has two elements } \\
\chi_{1}(000) & =\chi_{1}(111)=1 \text { (identity character) and } \\
\chi_{2}(000) & =+1, \chi_{2}(111)=-1 \\
f_{\chi_{1}} & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|000\rangle+|111\rangle) \\
f_{\chi_{2}} & =\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|000\rangle-|111\rangle) \\
D_{3,3} & =\left\{\left(\chi_{1}, \chi_{1}, \chi_{1}\right),\left(\chi_{2}, \chi_{2}, \chi_{2}\right)\right\} \\
F_{\chi_{1} \chi_{1} \chi_{1}} & =f_{\chi_{1}}^{\otimes^{3}} \\
F_{\chi_{2} \chi_{2} \chi_{2}} & =f_{\chi_{2}}^{\otimes^{3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, we encode 0 as $F_{\chi_{1} \chi_{1} \chi_{1}}$ and 1 as $F_{\chi_{2} \chi_{2} \chi_{2}}$. The circuit for implementing the code is shown in Figure 7.3. This code is called the Shor code.


Figure 7.3: Circuit for encoding the Shor code.

### 7.3.3 Laflamme code

Laflamme found the following 5 -qubit 1 -error correcting quantum code.

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 \mapsto\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle= & \frac{1}{4}\{(|00000\rangle+|11000\rangle+|01100\rangle+|00110\rangle+|00011\rangle+|10001\rangle) \\
& -(|01010\rangle+|00101\rangle+|10010\rangle+|01001\rangle+|10100\rangle) \\
& -(|11110\rangle+|01111\rangle+|10111\rangle+|11011\rangle+|11101\rangle)\} \\
1 \mapsto\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle= & \frac{1}{4}\{(|11111\rangle+|00111\rangle+|10011\rangle+|11001\rangle+|11100\rangle+|01110\rangle) \\
& -(|10101\rangle+|11010\rangle+|01101\rangle+|10110\rangle+|01011\rangle) \\
& -(|00001\rangle+|10000\rangle+|01000\rangle+|00100\rangle+|00010\rangle)\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The code can also be written in the following way. Let $a_{0}=a_{1}+a_{2}+$ $a_{3}+a_{4}+x(\bmod 2)$.
$x \mapsto\left|\psi_{x}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}, a_{4} \in \mathbb{Z}_{2}}(-1)^{\left(a_{0} a_{2}+a_{1} a_{3}+a_{2} a_{4}+a_{3} a_{0}+a_{4} a_{1}\right)}\left|a_{0}\right\rangle\left|a_{1} a_{2} a_{3} a_{4}\right\rangle$.
This observation allows us to construct a simple circuit for implementing the Laflamme code. The circuit for the Laflamme code is shown in Figure 7.4.


Figure 7.4: Circuit for encoding the Laflamme code.

### 7.3.4 Hadamard-Steane quantum code

Consider the Table 7.1. The $i j^{t h}$ entry, for $i, j>1$, is the inner product of the $i^{t h}$ entry in the first row and $j^{t h}$ entry in the first column, computed over the field $\mathbb{F}_{2}$.

The portion inside the box is Hadamard [7,3,4] simplex code. Let

|  | 000 | 001 | 010 | 011 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 000 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 001 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 010 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 011 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 100 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 101 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 110 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 111 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

Table 7.1:
$C$ be the set of all row vectors. Define

$$
\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2}} \sum_{\boldsymbol{x} \in C}|\boldsymbol{x}\rangle \text { and }\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle=\frac{1}{2 \sqrt{2}} \sum_{\boldsymbol{x} \in C+(1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1)}|\boldsymbol{x}\rangle
$$

Then, $\operatorname{lin}\left\{\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle,\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle\right\}$ is a 7 -qubit single error correcting quantum code. Note that, $C \cup C+(1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1)$ is a group code of minimum distance 3.

Permute the columns to the order 4671235 in the table above. Then the enumerated rows can be expressed as

$$
\left(\begin{array}{llll}
x_{1} & x_{2} & x_{3} & x_{1}+x_{2}
\end{array} x_{1}+x_{3} \quad x_{2}+x_{3} \quad x_{1}+x_{2}+x_{3}\right)
$$

where $x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}$ vary in $\mathbb{F}_{2}$. In other words we have expressed the code as a parity check code with the first three positions for messages and the last four as parity checks. Then the Hadamard-Steane code can be expressed as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\psi_{a}\right\rangle=\sum_{x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}} \mid x_{1}+a x_{2}+a x_{3}+a & x_{1}+x_{2}+a x_{1}+x_{3}+a \\
& \left.x_{2}+x_{3}+a x_{1}+x_{2}+x_{3}+a\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

where $a \in\{0,1\}$. Put $y_{1}=x_{1}+x_{3}+a, y_{2}=x_{2}+x_{3}+a, y_{3}=$ $x_{1}+x_{2}+x_{3}+a$. Then

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\left|\psi_{a}\right\rangle=\sum_{y_{1}, y_{2}, y_{3} \in\{0,1\}} \mid y_{2}+y_{3}+a y_{1}+y_{3}+a y_{1}+y_{2}+y_{3} y_{1}+y_{2}+a \\
\left.y_{1} y_{2} y_{3}\right\rangle
\end{array}
$$



Figure 7.5: Circuit implementing the Steane-Hadamard code.

This shows that the code can be implemented by the circuit shown in Figure 7.5.

Exercise 7.3.3 Verify directly the Knill-Laflamme conditions for $\left\{\left|\psi_{0}\right\rangle,\left|\psi_{1}\right\rangle\right\}$, for single error correction.

### 7.3.5 Codes based on Bush matrices

Let $\mathbb{F}_{q}=\left\{a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{q}\right\}$ be the field of $q=p^{m}$ elements, where $p$ is prime.
Let $\mathbb{P}(t, q)=\left\{\right.$ all polynomials of degree $\leq t$ with coefficients from $\left.\mathbb{F}_{q}\right\}$, a linear space of dimension $q^{t+1}$.

We enumerate the elements of $\mathbb{P}(t-1, q), t-1 \leq q$ as $\varphi_{0}, \varphi_{1}, \ldots$, $\varphi_{N-1}$ and construct the matrix $B_{t}$ of order $q^{t} \times q, q^{t}=N$ as follows :

|  | $a_{1}$ | $a_{2}$ | $\cdots$ | $a_{j}$ | $\cdots$ | $a_{q}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\varphi_{0}=\mathbf{0}$ | 0 | 0 | $\cdots$ | 0 | $\cdots$ | 0 |
| $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\vdots$ |
| $\varphi_{i}$ | $\varphi_{i}\left(a_{1}\right)$ | $\varphi_{i}\left(a_{2}\right)$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{i}\left(a_{j}\right)$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{i}\left(a_{q}\right)$ |
| $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\cdots$ | $\vdots$ |
| $\varphi_{N-1}$ | $\varphi_{N-1}\left(a_{1}\right)$ | $\varphi_{N-1}\left(a_{2}\right)$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{N-1}\left(a_{j}\right)$ | $\cdots$ | $\varphi_{N-1}\left(a_{q}\right)$ |

Denote the linear space of all the row vectors in $B_{t}$ also by $B_{t}$.

Proposition 7.3.4 $B_{t}$ is a linear code of minimum distance $q-t+1$.

Proof Consider the $i$-th row in $B_{t}, i \neq 0 . \varphi_{i}$ is a nonzero polynomial of degree $\leq t-1$. So $\varphi_{i}$ has at most $t-1$ zeroes. Thus, the weight of this row $\geq q-t+1$. On the other hand consider the polynomial

$$
\varphi(x)=\left(x-a_{1}\right)\left(x-a_{2}\right) \cdots\left(x-a_{t-1}\right)
$$

Its zeros are exactly $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots a_{t-1}$. Thus, the weight of the corresponding row is $q-t+1$.

Corollary 7.3.5 $B_{t}$ is a $\left\lfloor\frac{q-t}{2}\right\rfloor$-error correcting group code.
If $E_{t}$ is the Hamming sphere of radius $\left\lfloor\frac{q-t}{2}\right\rfloor$ with $(0, \ldots, 0)$ as center in $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{q^{t}}$ then $\left(E_{t}-E_{t}\right) \cap B_{t}=\{\mathbf{0}\}$.

Proposition 7.3.6 Let $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in B_{t}^{\perp} \subset\left(\hat{\mathbb{F}}_{q}\right)^{q}$. If $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \neq 1$, then $w(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \geq t+1$. Thus $B_{t}^{\perp}$ is a $\left\lfloor\frac{t}{2}\right\rfloor$ error correcting group code. If $F_{t}$ is the Hamming sphere of radius $\left\lfloor\frac{t}{2}\right\rfloor$ then $F_{t}^{-1} F_{t} \cap B_{t}^{\perp}=\{\mathbf{1}\}$.

Proof Suppose $w(\boldsymbol{\alpha})=r$, where $0<r \leq t$. Let $\boldsymbol{\alpha}=\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{q}\right)$, $\alpha_{i} \in \hat{\mathbb{F}}_{q}, \alpha_{i} \neq 1$ if and only if $i \in\left\{i_{1}<i_{2}<\cdots<i_{r}\right\}$. Write $b_{j}=a_{i_{j}}, j=1,2, \ldots, r$. For arbitrary $c_{1}, c_{2}, \ldots, c_{r}$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ consider the Lagrange polynomial (for interpolation)

$$
\varphi(x)=\sum c_{j} \frac{\left(x-b_{1}\right)\left(x-b_{2}\right) \cdots\left(x-b_{j}\right)^{\gamma} \cdots\left(x-b_{r}\right)}{\left(b_{j}-b_{1}\right)\left(b_{j}-b_{2}\right) \cdots\left(b_{j}-b_{j}\right)^{\wedge} \cdots\left(b_{j}-b_{r}\right)}
$$

where " " indicates omission of that term. Then $\varphi$ is a polynomial of degree $r-1(\leq t-1)$ and $\varphi\left(b_{j}\right)=c_{j}, \quad j=1,2, \ldots, r$. Corresponding to $\varphi$ there is a row in $B_{t}$. Evaluating $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ on this row we get

$$
\boldsymbol{\alpha}\left(\varphi\left(a_{1}\right), \varphi\left(a_{2}\right), \ldots, \varphi\left(a_{q}\right)\right)=\prod_{j=1}^{r} \alpha_{i_{j}}\left(c_{j}\right)=1
$$

since $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in B_{t}^{\perp}$. Since $c_{j}$ 's are arbitrary, we have $\alpha_{i_{j}}=1$ for all $j=$ $1,2, \ldots, r$, a contradiction.

We can now use Theorem 7.1.10 and Theorem 7.1.14 to the case $C_{1} \subset C_{2} \subset A^{q}, A=\mathbb{F}_{q}$, as an additive group, $C_{1}=B_{t^{\prime}}, C_{2}=B_{t}$, $0<t^{\prime}<t<q$. Then $B_{t}=B_{t^{\prime}} \oplus S$, where $S$ consists of all polynomials of the form

$$
s(x)=x^{t^{\prime}}\left(a_{0}+a_{1} x+\cdots+a_{t-t^{\prime}-1} x^{t-t^{\prime}-1}\right) .
$$

For any polynomial $\varphi$ consider the state $|\varphi\rangle=\left|\varphi\left(a_{1}\right) \varphi\left(a_{2}\right) \ldots \varphi\left(a_{q}\right)\right\rangle$. For any $s \in S$ define

$$
\psi_{s}=q^{-\frac{t^{\prime}}{2}} \sum_{\varphi \in \mathbb{P}\left(t^{\prime}-1, q\right)}|\varphi\rangle .
$$

Then $\mathcal{C}_{t, t^{\prime}}=\operatorname{lin}\left\{\psi_{s} \mid s \in S\right\}$ is a quantum code with $\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{C}_{t, t^{\prime}}=q^{t-t^{\prime}}$, which can correct $\left\lfloor\frac{q-t}{2}\right\rfloor \wedge\left\lfloor\frac{t^{\prime}}{2}\right\rfloor$ errors.

Remark 7.3.7 Choose $t=\lfloor\theta q\rfloor, t^{\prime}=\left\lfloor\theta^{\prime} q\right\rfloor, 0<\theta^{\prime}<\theta<1$. Then, as $q \rightarrow \infty$, we have

$$
\frac{\log \operatorname{dim} \mathcal{C}_{t, t^{\prime}}}{\log \operatorname{dim} \mathcal{H}}=\frac{t-t^{\prime}}{q}=\frac{\lfloor\theta q\rfloor-\left\lfloor\theta^{\prime} q\right\rfloor}{q} \rightarrow\left(\theta-\theta^{\prime}\right) .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\frac{\# \text { errors corrected }}{\# \text { qubits }} \geq \frac{\left\lfloor\frac{(1-\theta)}{2}\right\rfloor \wedge\left\lfloor\frac{\theta^{\prime} q}{2}\right\rfloor}{q} \rightarrow \frac{1-\theta}{2} \wedge \frac{\theta^{\prime}}{2}
$$

as $q \rightarrow \infty$.
Then, for $\theta=\frac{3}{4}, \theta^{\prime}=\frac{1}{4}$ we get, $\theta-\theta^{\prime}=\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1-\theta}{2} \wedge \frac{\theta^{\prime}}{2}=\frac{1}{8}$. It means $50 \%$ of the qubits are used for sending the messages, $50 \%$ for error checking and up to $12 \frac{1}{2} \%$ errors can be corrected.

### 7.3.6 Quantum codes from BCH codes

In this example we use the celebrated BCH (Bose-Chaudhuri-Hocquenhem) codes to construct a quantum code. We begin with a few facts from classical coding theory. Let $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ be a vector space over the finite field $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ with $q=p^{m}$, where $p$ is a prime. Choose and fix a primitive element $\alpha$ of $\mathbb{F}_{q^{n}}$.

Let $\sigma$ be a cyclic permutation defined by

$$
\sigma\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n-1}\right) \mapsto\left(a_{n-1}, a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n-2}\right)
$$

Then a subspace $C \subset \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ invariant under the cyclic permutation $\sigma$ is called a cyclic code of length $n$. For every word $\boldsymbol{w}=\left(w_{0}, \ldots, w_{n-1}\right) \in \mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$ we associate the word polynomial $w(x)=w_{0}+w_{1} x+\cdots+w_{n-1} x^{n-1}$. If $w$ is in $C$ it is called the code word polynomial. Let $\mathcal{R}_{n}=\mathbb{F}_{q}[x] /\left(x^{n}-1\right)$. Then $\mathcal{R}_{n}$ can be viewed as a vector space over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ and it is isomorphic to $\mathbb{F}_{q}^{n}$. Under the identification $w \rightsquigarrow w(x)$ the image $C^{*}$ of a cyclic code $C$ in $\mathcal{R}_{n}$ is an ideal with a single generator polynomial $g_{C}$. Without loss of generality we may assume $g_{C}$ to be monic and therefore unique. It is known that $g_{C}$ is a divisor of $x^{n}-1$. If $\operatorname{deg}\left(g_{C}\right)=k$ then $\operatorname{dim} C=n-k$. If $g_{C}$ has a string of successive powers $\alpha^{a}, \alpha^{a+1}, \ldots, \alpha^{a+b-2}$ as its roots and $0 \leq a<a+b-2 \leq q^{n}-2$, then $d(C) \geq b$ (where $d(C)$ is the minimum distance of $C$ ). For any cyclic code denote

$$
C^{\perp}=\left\{\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \boldsymbol{y}=x_{1} y_{1}+\cdots+x_{n} y_{n}=0, \quad \text { for all } \boldsymbol{y} \in C\right\}
$$

Then $C^{\perp}$ is also a cyclic code called the dual of $C$.
Conversely if $g$ is a divisor of $x^{n}-1$ then there exists a unique cyclic code $C_{g}$ generated by $g$. Suppose $x^{n}-1=g h$ where $g(x)=$ $a_{0}+a_{1} x+\cdots+a_{k-1} x^{k-1}+x^{k}, h(x)=b_{0}+b_{1} x+\cdots+b_{n-k-1} x^{n-k-1}+x^{n-k}$ so that $a_{0} b_{0}=-1$. Define $\tilde{h}=b_{0}^{-1}\left(1+b_{n-k-1} x+\cdots+b_{0} x^{n-k}\right)$. If $h$ has a string of successive powers $\alpha^{l}, \alpha^{l+1}, \ldots, \alpha^{l+m+2}$ as its roots then so does the polynomial $\tilde{h}$ which can be written as

$$
\tilde{h}=(-1)^{n-k}\left(\beta_{1} \cdots \beta_{n-k}\right)^{-1}\left(1-\beta_{1} x\right) \cdots\left(1-\beta_{n-k} x\right)
$$

where $\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{n-k}$ are the roots of $h$ in $\mathbb{F}_{q^{n}}$. It is known that $C^{\perp}=C_{\tilde{h}}$ and therefore it follows that $d\left(C^{\perp}\right) \geq m$. (For complete proofs we refer to $[15,7,13])$.

Let $x^{n}-1=g_{1} g_{2} g_{3}, d\left(C_{g_{1}}\right)=d_{1}, d\left(C_{g_{3}}\right)=d_{3}$. Note that $C_{g_{1} g_{2}}^{\perp}=C_{\tilde{g_{3}}}$. By Theorem 7.1.10 we get a quantum code $\mathcal{C}$ of dimension $\left(\# C_{g_{1}}\right) /\left(\# C_{g_{1} g_{2}}\right)=q^{\operatorname{deg}\left(g_{2}\right)}$. If $C_{g_{1}}$ and $C_{g_{3}}$ are respectively $t_{1}$ and $t_{3}$ - error correcting codes then $\mathcal{C}$ can correct $\min \left(t_{1}, t_{3}\right)$ errors.

## Lecture 8

## Classical Information Theory

### 8.1 Entropy as information

### 8.1.1 What is information?

Let us consider a simple statistical experiment of observing a random variable $X$, which takes one of the values $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}$ with respective probabilities $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{n}$ ( $p_{i} \geq 0$ for all $i$ and $\sum_{i} p_{i}=1$ ). When we observe $X$ we gain some information because the uncertainty regarding its value is eliminated. So the information gained is the uncertainty eliminated. We wish to have a mathematical model which gives us a measure of this information gained. A function which measures this information gained or the uncertainty associated with a statistical experiment must depend only on the probabilities $p_{i}$ and it should be symmetric. This is based on the intuition that changing the names of the outcomes does not change the uncertainty associated with the random variable $X$.

The desirable properties of a function $H$ which measures the uncertainty associated with a statistical experiment are listed below.

1) For each fixed $n, H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n} ; n\right)$ is a nonnegative symmetric function of $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$.
2) $H\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2} ; 2\right)=1$. This is to fix the scale of the measurement. One can look at the information obtained by performing one of the simplest statistical experiments. That is, tossing an unbiased coin and observing the outcome. An outcome of this experiment is said to give one unit of information.
3) $H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n} ; n\right)=0$ if and only if one of the $p_{i}$ 's is 1 . This corresponds to the case when there is no uncertainty in the outcome of the experiment.
4) Let $X$ and $Y$ be two independent statistical experiments. Let $X Y$ denote the experiment where the experiments $X$ and $Y$ are performed together and the output is the ordered pair of the outcomes of $X$ and $Y$. Then $H(X Y)=H(X)+H(Y)$.
5) $H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n} ; n\right)$ attains its maximum when $p_{i}=\frac{1}{n}$, for all $i \in 1,2, \ldots, n$. That is, we gain maximum information when all possible outcomes are equally likely.
6) $H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}, 0 ; n+1\right)=H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n} ; n\right)$.
7) $H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n} ; n\right)$ is continuous in $p_{1}, \ldots p_{n}$. This is a natural condition because we would like to say that, if two statistical experiments have the same number of possible outcomes and their associated probabilities are close, then the information contained in each of them should also be close.

Let $H_{0}=-\sum_{j=0}^{n} p_{j} \log _{2} p_{j}$. This function is also known as the entropy function. It can be verified that this function satisfies all the above desired properties.

Let $X, Y$ be two statistical experiments in which the outcomes of $X$ and $Y$ are $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}$ and $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}$ respectively. Suppose

$$
\operatorname{Pr}\left(X=x_{i}\right)=p_{i}, \operatorname{Pr}\left(Y=y_{j} \mid X=x_{i}\right)=q_{i j}, \operatorname{Pr}\left(Y=y_{j}\right)=q_{j} .
$$

Then $\operatorname{Pr}\left(X=x_{i}, Y=y_{j}\right)=p_{i} q_{i j}$. Let $H\left(q_{i 1}, \ldots, q_{i m}\right)=H_{i}(Y)$. We define conditional entropy as $H(Y \mid X)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} p_{i} H_{i}(Y)$, i.e. the entropy of $Y$ on knowing $X$.

Exercise 8.1.1 Verify that $H_{0}$ defined earlier satisfies the following equality.

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{0}(X Y)=H_{0}(X)+H_{0}(Y \mid X) \tag{8.1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

This can be interpreted as follows: The total information obtained by performing the experiments $X$ and $Y$ together is equal to the sum of the information obtained by performing $X$ and the information left in $Y$ after knowing the outcome of $X$.

This seems to be a reasonable property that the function $H$ should have. Note that Property 4) is a special case of equation (8.1.2). If we replace Property 4) by the hypothesis, $H(X Y)=H(X)+H(Y \mid X)$ then there is a unique function which satisfies all the above properties. Hence $H_{0}$ is the only candidate as a measure of entropy. From now onwards we use $H$ to denote the measure of entropy and $H(\boldsymbol{p})$ to denote
$H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n} ; n\right)$. If a random variable $X$ has a probability distribution $\boldsymbol{p}$, we sometimes write $H(\boldsymbol{p})$ instead of $H(X)$.

Note 8.1.3 If Property 4) is not changed then there can be other functions which satisfy properties 1) to 7). See [1] for other measures of entropy.

The entropy function $H$ has several important properties. Some of them are listed in the following exercises.

Exercise 8.1.4 Show that $H(X Y) \geq H(X)$.
Mutual information $H(X: Y)$ of two statistical experiments is defined as $H(X: Y)=H(X)+H(Y)-H(X Y)=H(X)-H(X \mid Y)$. It is the information about $X$ gained by observing $Y$.

Exercise 8.1.5 Show that $H(Y: X) \geq 0$, where $X$ and $Y$ are two statistical experiments.

Exercise 8.1.6 Let $X, Y, Z$ be three statistical experiments. Then show that the inequality $H(X \mid Y) \geq H(X \mid Y Z)$ holds.

Exercise 8.1.7 (Subadditivity) Show that $H(X Y) \leq H(X)+H(Y)$, where $X$ and $Y$ are two statistical experiments.

Exercise 8.1.8 (Strong subadditivity) Show that

$$
H(X Y Z)+H(Y) \leq H(X Y)+H(Y Z)
$$

where $X, Y$ and $Z$ are three statistical experiments. Equality holds if and only if $\{Z, Y, X\}$ is a Markov chain.

The following identity is also very useful.

## Theorem 8.1.9 (Chain rule for conditional entropy)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n} \mid Y\right)= \\
& \quad H\left(X_{1} \mid Y\right)+H\left(X_{2} \mid Y X_{1}\right)+\cdots+H\left(X_{n} \mid Y X_{1} \cdots X_{n-1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof We prove by induction.
Base case: $n=2$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
H\left(X_{1} X_{2} \mid Y\right) & =H\left(X_{1} X_{2} Y\right)-H(Y) \\
& =H\left(X_{1} X_{2} Y\right)-H\left(X_{1} Y\right)+H\left(X_{1} Y\right)-H(Y) \\
& =H\left(X_{2} \mid X_{1} Y\right)+H\left(X_{1} \mid Y\right) \\
& =H\left(X_{1} \mid Y\right)+H\left(X_{2} \mid X_{1} Y\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Induction hypothesis: For all $n \in\{2,3, \ldots k\}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n} \mid Y\right)= \\
& \quad H\left(X_{1} \mid Y\right)+H\left(X_{2} \mid Y X_{1}\right)+\cdots+H\left(X_{n} \mid Y X_{1} \cdots X_{n-1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Induction step:

$$
\begin{aligned}
H\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k+1} \mid Y\right)= & H\left(X_{1} \mid Y\right)+H\left(X_{2} \ldots X_{k+1} \mid Y X_{1}\right) \text { (by base case) } \\
= & H\left(X_{1} \mid Y\right)+H\left(X_{2} \mid Y X_{1}\right)+\cdots+ \\
& H\left(X_{k+1} \mid Y X_{1} \ldots X_{k}\right) \text { (by induction hypothesis). }
\end{aligned}
$$

Exercise 8.1.10 (Data processing inequality) Let $X \rightarrow Y \rightarrow Z$ be a Markov chain. Then $H(X) \geq H(X: Y) \geq H(X: Z)$.

Exercise 8.1.11 (Data pipeline inequality) Let $X \rightarrow Y \rightarrow Z$ be a Markov chain. Then $H(Z) \geq H(Z: Y) \geq H(Z: X)$.

### 8.2 A Theorem of Shannon

Let $A$ be an alphabet of size $N$. Denote by $S(A)$ the free semigroup generated by $A$. Any element $W \in S(A)$ can be expressed as $W=$ $a_{i_{1}} a_{i_{2}} \ldots a_{i_{n}}$, where $a_{i_{j}} \in A$ for each $j$. We say that $W$ is a word of length $n$. Let $B$ be another alphabet, say of size $M$. Any map $C: A \rightarrow S(B)$ is called a code and any word in the image of $C$ is called a codeword. Extend $C$ to a map $\tilde{C}: S(A) \rightarrow S(B)$ by putting $\tilde{C}(W)=\tilde{C}\left(a_{i_{1}} a_{i_{2}} \ldots a_{i_{n}}\right)=$ $C\left(a_{i_{1}}\right) C\left(a_{i_{2}}\right) \ldots C\left(a_{i_{n}}\right)$. We say that $C$ is uniquely decipherable if $\widetilde{C}$ is injective (or one to one). $C$ is called an irreducible code if no code word of $C$ is an extension of another code word. An irreducible code is uniquely decipherable. Indeed, in such a case we can recover a word $W$ in $S(A)$ from its image $\tilde{C}(W)$ by just reading $\tilde{C}(W)$ left to right.

Theorem 8.2.1 Let $A=\left\{a_{1}, \ldots, a_{N}\right\}$ and $B=\left\{b_{1}, \ldots, b_{M}\right\}$ be two alphabets. Let $C: A \rightarrow S(B)$ be an irreducible code. Let the lengths of the words $C\left(a_{1}\right), C\left(a_{2}\right), \ldots, C\left(a_{N}\right)$, be $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{N}$, respectively. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
M^{-n_{1}}+M^{-n_{2}}+\cdots+M^{-n_{N}} \leq 1 \tag{8.2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Conversely, if $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{N}$ are nonnegative integers satisfying this inequality then there exists an irreducible code $C: A \rightarrow S(B)$ such that $C\left(a_{i}\right)$ has length $n_{i}$ for each $i=1,2, \ldots, N$.

Proof Let $C: A \rightarrow S(B)$ be an irreducible code with $L=\max _{i} n_{i}$. Denote by $w_{i}$ the number of code words of length $i$.
Necessity: Since there can be at most $M$ words of length 1 we have $w_{1} \leq M$. Since $C$ is irreducible, words of length 2 which are extensions of the code words of length 1 cannot appear in the image of $C$. This gives $w_{2} \leq M^{2}-w_{1} M$.

Continuing this way we get $w_{L} \leq M^{L}-w_{1} M^{L-1}-\cdots-w_{L-1} M$. The last inequality can be rewritten as

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{1} M^{-1}+w_{2} M^{-2}+\cdots+w_{L} M^{-L} \leq 1 \tag{8.2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Sufficiency: We pick any $w_{1}$ words of length 1 . Then we pick any $w_{2}$ words of length 2 which are not extensions of the $w_{1}$ words of length 1 already picked. This is possible because inequality (8.2.3) is satisfied. This way we keep picking words of required lengths.

Suppose the letters $a_{i}, i=1,2, \ldots, N$ of the alphabet $A$ are picked with probabilities $p_{i}, i=1,2, \ldots, N$ respectively. Then the expected length of the code is $\sum_{i=1}^{N} p_{i} n_{i}$, where $n_{i}$ is the length of $C\left(a_{i}\right)$.

Let

$$
q_{j}=\frac{M^{-n_{j}}}{\sum_{i=1}^{N} M^{n_{i}}} \quad \text { and } \quad \bar{\ell}(C)=\sum_{i=1}^{N} p_{i} n_{i}
$$

By using the inequality "arithmetic mean is greater than or equal to geometric mean" we get

$$
\prod\left(\frac{q_{j}}{p_{j}}\right)^{p_{j}} \leq \sum_{j} p_{j}\left(\frac{q_{j}}{p_{j}}\right)=\sum_{j} q_{j}=1
$$

Taking logarithm on both sides and using (8.2.3), we get

$$
\bar{\ell}(C) \geq-\frac{\sum p_{i} \log _{2} p_{i}}{\log _{2} M}
$$

Hence the average length of an irreducible code must be at least $-\frac{\sum p_{i} \log _{2} p_{i}}{\log _{2} M}$.

Let $n_{j}$ be an integer between $-\frac{\log _{2} p_{j}}{\log _{2} M}$ and $-\frac{\log _{2} p_{j}}{\log _{2} M}+1$ for all $j \in\{1,2, \ldots, N\}$. Then $\sum_{j} M^{-n_{j}} \leq \sum_{j} p_{j} \leq 1$. By the above discussion we know that an irreducible code $C^{\prime}$ exists with length of $C^{\prime}\left(a_{i}\right)$ equal to $n_{i}$. The expected length of this code word $\bar{\ell}\left(C^{\prime}\right)\left(=\sum_{j} n_{j} p_{j}\right)$ satisfies

$$
\frac{\sum p_{j} \log _{2} p_{j}}{\log _{2} M} \leq \bar{\ell}\left(C^{\prime}\right) \leq-\frac{\sum p_{j} \log _{2} p_{j}}{\log _{2} M}+1
$$

Theorem 8.2.4 (Sardinas-Patterson, 1953) Let $A=\left\{a_{1}, \ldots, a_{N}\right\}$ and $B=\left\{b_{1}, \ldots, b_{M}\right\}$ be two alphabets. Let $C: A \rightarrow S(B)$ be a uniquely decipherable code. Let the lengths of the words $C\left(a_{1}\right), C\left(a_{2}\right), \ldots, C\left(a_{N}\right)$ be $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{N}$ respectively. Then $\sum_{j=1}^{N} M^{-n_{j}} \leq 1$.

Proof Let $w_{j}=\#\left\{i \mid n_{i}=j\right\}$. Then the desired inequality can be rewritten as

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{L} w_{j} M^{-j} \leq 1 \text { where } L=\max \left(n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{N}\right)
$$

Let $Q(x)=\sum_{j=1}^{L} w_{j} x^{j}$ and let $N(k)$ denote the number of $B$ words of length $k$. Then we have the following recursive relation.

$$
\begin{equation*}
N(k)=w_{1} N(k-1)+w_{2} N(k-2)+\cdots+w_{L} N(k-L) \tag{8.2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $N(0)=1$ and $N(j)=0$ if $j<0$. Consider the formal power series $F(x)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} N(k) x^{k}$. We know that $N(k) \leq M^{k}$. Hence the formal series converges in the case $|x|<M^{-1}$. From (8.2.5) we have $F(x)-1=Q(x) F(x) \Rightarrow F(x)=\frac{1}{1-Q(x)} . F(x)$ is analytic in the disc $\left(|x|<M^{-1}\right)$ and $1-Q(x)>0$ when $|x|<M^{-1}$. Therefore, by continuity we have, $Q\left(M^{-1}\right) \leq 1$. This is the required inequality.

Corollary 8.2.6 Let $A$ and $B$ be as in Theorem 8.2.1. Suppose the letters $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{N}$ are picked with probabilities $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{N}$ respectively. Then for any uniquely decipherable code $C$ from $A$ to $S(B)$ one has $\bar{\ell}(C) \geq \frac{-\sum p_{i} \log _{2} p_{i}}{\log _{2} M}$.

Thus, Theorem 8.2.4 implies that corresponding to any uniquely decipherable code $C: A \rightarrow S(B)$ with length of code words $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{N}$ there exists an irreducible code $C^{\prime}: A \rightarrow S(B)$ with lengths of code words $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{N}$.

Remark 8.2.7 Suppose an i.i.d. sequence $X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots$ of letters from $A$ comes from a source with $\operatorname{Pr}\left(X_{j}=a_{i}\right)=p_{i}$. Then $\operatorname{Pr}\left(\left(X_{1} X_{2} \ldots X_{n}\right)=\right.$ $\left.\left(a_{i_{1}} a_{i_{2}} \ldots a_{i_{n}}\right)\right)=p_{i_{1}} p_{i_{2}} \ldots p_{i_{n}}$ and $H\left(X_{1} X_{2} \ldots X_{n}\right)=n H\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{N}\right)$. Now consider blocks of length $n$. The new alphabet is $A^{n}$. Encode $C: \boldsymbol{a} \rightarrow C(\boldsymbol{a})$, where $\boldsymbol{a}=a_{i_{1}} a_{i_{2}} \ldots a_{i_{n}}$ and $C(\boldsymbol{a}) \in S(B)$, in a uniquely decipherable form, so that the following inequalities hold.

$$
\frac{n H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{N}\right)}{\log _{2} M} \leq \sum_{\boldsymbol{a}} p(\boldsymbol{a}) \ell(C(\boldsymbol{a}))<\frac{n H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{N}\right)}{\log _{2} M}+1
$$

This implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\frac{\sum_{\boldsymbol{a}} p(\boldsymbol{a}) \ell(C(\boldsymbol{a}))}{n}-\frac{H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{N}\right)}{\log _{2} M}\right|<\frac{1}{n} \tag{8.2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this block encoding procedure, the expected length of an encoded block is

$$
\bar{\ell}(C)=\sum_{\boldsymbol{a}} p(\boldsymbol{a}) \ell(C(\boldsymbol{a}))
$$

The ratio of expected length of an encoded block and the size of the $\boldsymbol{a}$ block, namely $\frac{\sum_{\boldsymbol{a} p(\boldsymbol{a}) \ell(C(\boldsymbol{a}))}^{n}}{n}$, is called the compression coefficient. Equation (8.2.8) tells us that, as $n$ increases the compression coefficient tends to $\frac{H\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{N}\right)}{\log _{2} M}$.

### 8.3 Stationary Source

We consider a discrete information source $\mathcal{J}$ which outputs elements $x_{n} \in A, n=0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$ where $A$ is a finite alphabet. Thus a 'possible life history' of the output can be expressed as a bilateral sequence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{x}=\left(\ldots, x_{-1}, x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots\right), \quad x_{n} \in A \tag{8.3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any set of the form

$$
\left\{\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \in A^{\mathbb{Z}}, x_{t_{1}}=a_{1}, \ldots, x_{t_{n}}=a_{n}\right\}=\left[a_{1} \ldots a_{n}\right]_{t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}}
$$

is called cylinder with base $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}$ at times $t_{1}<t_{2}<\cdots<t_{n}$. Consider the smallest $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{F}_{A}$ containing such cylinders. Any probability measure $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ on the Borel space $\left(A^{\mathbb{Z}}, \mathcal{F}_{A}\right)$ is uniquely determined by the values of $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ on the cylinders. The probability space $\left(A^{\mathbb{Z}}, \mathcal{F}_{A}, \boldsymbol{\mu}\right)$ is called a discrete time random process.

Consider the shift transformation $T: A^{\mathbb{Z}} \rightarrow A^{\mathbb{Z}}$ defined by $T \boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{y}$ where $y_{n}=x_{n-1}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. If the probability measure $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ is invariant under $T$ we say that $\left(A^{\mathbb{Z}}, \mathcal{F}_{A}, \boldsymbol{\mu}\right)$ is a stationary information source and we denote it by $[A, \boldsymbol{\mu}]$. (From now onwards when there is no chance of confusion we may use the notation $\mu(E)$ to denote $\operatorname{Pr}(E, \boldsymbol{\mu})$.) For such a source

$$
\mu\left(\left[a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{n}\right]_{t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots, t_{n}}\right)=\mu\left(\left[a_{1} a_{2} \ldots a_{n}\right]_{t_{1}+1, t_{2}+1, \ldots, t_{n}+1}\right)
$$

The information emitted by such a source during the time period $t$, $t+1, \ldots, t+n-1$ is also the information emitted during the period 0, $1, \ldots, n-1$ and is given by

$$
H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})=-\sum_{C} \mu(C) \log \mu(C)
$$

where the summation is over all cylinders based on $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n-1}$ at times $0,1,2, \ldots, n-1, a_{j}$ varying in $A$. We call $\frac{H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})}{n}$ as the rate at which information is generated by the source during $[0, n-1]$. Our next result shows that this rate converges to a limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

Theorem 8.3.2 For any stationary source $[A, \boldsymbol{\mu}]$ the sequence $\frac{H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})}{n}$ monotonically decreases to a limit $H(\boldsymbol{\mu})$.

Proof For any $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n-1} \in A$ we write

$$
\left[a_{0} a_{1} \ldots a_{n-1}\right]=\left[a_{0} a_{1} \ldots a_{n-1}\right]_{0,1,2, \ldots, n-1}
$$

Consider the output during $[0, n-1]$ as a random variable. Then we can express

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{n+1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}) & =-\mathbb{E}\left(\log \mu\left[x_{-n}, x_{-(n-1)}, \ldots, x_{0}\right]\right) \\
H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu}) & =-\mathbb{E}\left(\log \mu\left[x_{-n}, x_{-(n-1)}, \ldots, x_{-1}\right]\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where the expectation is with respect to $\boldsymbol{\mu}$. We now show that the sequence $H_{n+1}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})$ is monotonic decreasing. Let $A, B$ and $C$ be schemes determined by the cylinders $\left[x_{0}\right],\left[x_{-n}, x_{-(n-1)}, \ldots, x_{-1}\right]$ and
$\left[x_{-(n+1)}\right]$ respectively. Then the joint scheme $B C$ is given by the cylinder $\left[x_{-(n+1)}, x_{-n}, \ldots, x_{-1}\right]$. Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(A \mid B) & =H_{n+1}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu}) \text { and } \\
H(A \mid B C) & =H_{n+2}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{n+1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By using the fact $H(A \mid B C) \leq H(A \mid B)$ we get

$$
H_{n+2}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{n+1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}) \leq H_{n+1}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu}) .
$$

Also $H_{2}(\boldsymbol{\mu}) \leq 2 H_{1}(\boldsymbol{\mu})$. Thus the sequence $H_{1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}), H_{2}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}), \ldots$, $H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{n-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}), \ldots$ is monotonic decreasing. Since

$$
\frac{H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})}{n}=\frac{H_{1}(\boldsymbol{\mu})+\left(H_{2}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{1}(\boldsymbol{\mu})\right)+\cdots+\left(H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})-H_{n-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu})\right)}{n},
$$

it follows that $\frac{H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})}{n}$ is monotonic decreasing. But $\frac{H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})}{n}$ is bounded from below. Hence $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{H_{n}(\boldsymbol{\mu})}{n}$ exists.

## Lecture 9

## Quantum Information Theory

## 9.1 von Neumann Entropy

Following the exposition of quantum probability in chapter 1 we now replace the classical sample space $\Omega=\{1,2, \ldots, n\}$ by a complex Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ of dimension $n$ and the probability distribution $p_{1}, p_{2} \ldots p_{n}$ on $\Omega$ by a state $\rho$, i.e., a nonnegative definite operator $\rho$ of unit trace. Following von Neumann we define the entropy of a quantum state $\rho$ by the expression $S(\rho)=-\operatorname{Tr}(\rho \log \rho)$ where the logarithm is with respect to the base 2 and it is understood that the function $x \log x$ is defined to be 0 whenever $x=0$. We call $S(\rho)$ the von Neumann entropy of $\rho$. If $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ are the eigenvalues of $\rho$ (inclusive of multiplicity) we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
S(\rho)=-\sum_{i} \lambda_{i} \log \lambda_{i} . \tag{9.1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\rho$ is the diagonal matrix $\operatorname{diag}\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$ and $\boldsymbol{p}=\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$ a probability distribution, then $S(\rho)=H(\boldsymbol{p})=-\sum_{i} p_{i} \log p_{i}$.

### 9.2 Properties of von Neumann Entropy

Property 1) $0 \leq S(\rho) \leq \log _{2} d$, where $d$ is the dimension of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} . S(\rho)=0$ if and only if $\rho$ is pure, i.e., $\rho=|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ for some unit vector $|\psi\rangle$ in $\mathcal{H} . S(\rho)=\log _{2} d$ if and only if $\rho=d^{-1} I$.
Property 2) For any unitary operator $U, S\left(U \rho U^{\dagger}\right)=S(\rho)$.
Property 3) For any pure state $|\psi\rangle, S(|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|)=0$.
Note that Property 3) is already contained in Property 1).
Suppose $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ describes the Hilbert space of a composite quantum system whose constituents are systems $A$ and $B$ with their states
coming from the Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ respectively. For any operator $X$ on $\mathcal{H}$ we define two operators $X^{A}$ and $X^{B}$ on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ respectively by

$$
\begin{align*}
\langle u| X^{A}|v\rangle & =\sum_{j}\left\langle u \otimes f_{j}\right| X\left|v \otimes f_{j}\right\rangle  \tag{9.2.1}\\
\left\langle u^{\prime}\right| X^{B}\left|v^{\prime}\right\rangle & =\sum_{i}\left\langle e_{i} \otimes u^{\prime}\right| X\left|e_{i} \otimes v^{\prime}\right\rangle \tag{9.2.2}
\end{align*}
$$

for all $u, v \in \mathcal{H}_{A}, u^{\prime}, v^{\prime} \in \mathcal{H}_{B},\left\{e_{i}\right\},\left\{f_{j}\right\}$ being orthonormal bases in $\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}$ respectively. Note that the right side of (9.2.1) and (9.2.2) are sesquilinear forms on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, and therefore the operators $X^{A}$ and $X^{B}$ are uniquely defined. A simple algebra shows that $X^{A}$ and $X^{B}$ are independent of the choice of orthonormal bases in $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$. We write $X^{A}=\operatorname{Tr}_{B} X, X^{B}=\operatorname{Tr}_{A} X . \operatorname{Tr}_{A}$ and $\operatorname{Tr}_{B}$ are called the operators of relative trace on the operator variable $X$. Note that $\operatorname{Tr} X^{A}=\operatorname{Tr} X^{B}=$ $\operatorname{Tr} X$. If $X$ is nonnegative definite so are $X^{A}$ and $X^{B}$. In particular, for any state $\rho$ of the composite system $\rho^{A}$ and $\rho^{B}$ are states on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ respectively. We call them the marginal states of $\rho$.

Let $\left|i_{A}\right\rangle,\left|j_{B}\right\rangle, i=1,2, \ldots, m ; j=1,2, \ldots, n$ be orthonormal bases for $\mathcal{H}_{A}, \mathcal{H}_{B}$ respectively. Then $\left\{\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\left|j_{B}\right\rangle, 1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n\right\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $\mathcal{H}=\mathcal{H}_{A B}=\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and hence any joint pure state $|\psi\rangle$ can be expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\psi\rangle=\sum_{i, j} a_{i j}\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\left|j_{B}\right\rangle \tag{9.2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The $m \times n$ matrix $A=\left[a_{i j}\right]$ can be expressed as

$$
\left[a_{i j}\right]=U\left[\begin{array}{c|c}
\mathrm{D} & 0 \\
\hline 0 & 0
\end{array}\right] V
$$

where $U$ is a unitary matrix of order $m \times m, V$ is a unitary matrix of order $n \times n$ and $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{r}\right), s_{1} \geq s_{2} \geq \cdots \geq s_{r} \geq 0, r$ being the rank of $\left[a_{i j}\right]$. It follows that $s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{r}$ are positive eigenvalues of the matrices $\sqrt{A^{\dagger} A}$ and $\sqrt{A A^{\dagger}}$, called the singular values of $A$.

Define the vectors

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\alpha_{A}^{i}\right\rangle=\sum_{k=1}^{m} u_{k i}\left|k_{A}\right\rangle, \quad 1 \leq i \leq m \\
& \left|\beta_{B}^{j}\right\rangle=\sum_{l=1}^{n} v_{j l}\left|l_{B}\right\rangle, \quad 1 \leq j \leq n
\end{aligned}
$$

where $U=\left[u_{k i}\right], V=\left[v_{j l}\right]$. Then (9.2.3) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\psi\rangle=\sum_{i=1}^{r} s_{i}\left|\alpha_{A}^{i}\right\rangle\left|\beta_{B}^{i}\right\rangle \tag{9.2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\left|\alpha_{A}^{1}\right\rangle,\left|\alpha_{A}^{2}\right\rangle, \ldots,\left|\alpha_{A}^{r}\right\rangle$ and $\left|\beta_{B}^{1}\right\rangle,\left|\beta_{B}^{2}\right\rangle, \ldots,\left|\beta_{B}^{r}\right\rangle$ are orthonormal sets in $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ of same cardinality and $s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{r}$ are the singular values of $A$. The decomposition of $|\psi\rangle$ in the form (9.2.4) is called the Schmidt decomposition of $|\psi\rangle$.
Property 4) Let $|\Omega\rangle\langle\Omega|$ be a pure state for $A B$ and let $\rho^{A}$ and $\rho^{B}$ be its marginal states. Then $S\left(\rho^{A}\right)=S\left(\rho^{B}\right)$.

Proof By Schmidt decomposition we know that if $|\psi\rangle$ is a pure state for the composite system, $A B$; then there exist orthonormal states $\left|i_{A}\right\rangle$ for system $A$ and orthonormal states $\left|i_{B}\right\rangle$ for system $B$ such that $|\psi\rangle=\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\left|i_{B}\right\rangle$, where $\lambda_{i}$ 's are nonnegative real numbers satisfying $\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}^{2}=1$. So we can write $|\Omega\rangle\langle\Omega|=\sum \lambda_{i} \lambda_{j}\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\left\langle j_{A}\right| \otimes\left|i_{B}\right\rangle\left\langle j_{B}\right|$. Thus $\rho^{A}=\sum \lambda_{i}^{2}\left|i_{A}\right\rangle\left\langle i_{A}\right|$ and $\rho^{B}=\sum \lambda_{i}^{2}\left|i_{B}\right\rangle\left\langle i_{B}\right|$. Hence the eigenvalues of $\rho^{A}$ and $\rho^{B}$ are same. Therefore by (9.1.1) we have $S\left(\rho^{A}\right)=S\left(\rho^{B}\right)$.

Property 5) Let $\rho_{1}, \rho_{2}, \ldots, \rho_{n}$ be states with mutually orthogonal support and let $\boldsymbol{p}=\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$ be a probability distribution. Then

$$
S\left(\sum_{i} p_{i} \rho_{i}\right)=H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum_{i} p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)
$$

where $H(\boldsymbol{p})=-\sum p_{i} \log p_{i}$.
Proof Let $\lambda_{i}^{j}$ and $\left|e_{i}^{j}\right\rangle$ be the eigenvalues and corresponding eigenvectors of $\rho_{i}$. Then $\sum p_{i} \rho_{i}$ has eigenvalues $p_{i} \lambda_{i}^{j}$ with respective eigenvectors $\left|e_{i}^{j}\right\rangle$. Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(\sum_{i} p_{i} \rho_{i}\right) & =-\sum_{i, j} p_{i} \lambda_{i}^{j} \log p_{i} \lambda_{i}^{j} \\
& =-\sum_{i} p_{i} \log p_{i}-\sum_{i} p_{i} \sum_{j} \lambda_{i}^{j} \log \lambda_{i}^{j} \\
& =H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum_{i} p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

An immediate consequence of Property 5) is the following.
Corollary 9.2.5 (Joint entropy theorem) Let $\boldsymbol{p}=\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$ be a probability distribution, $\{|i\rangle, i=1,2, \ldots, n\}$ an orthonormal set of states in $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\left\{\rho_{i}, i=1,2, \ldots, n\right\}$ a set of density operators in $\mathcal{H}_{B}$. Then

$$
S\left(\sum_{i} p_{i}|i\rangle\langle i| \otimes \rho_{i}\right)=H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum_{i} p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)
$$

Property 6) The following theorem shows that the correspondence $\rho \rightarrow S(\rho)$ is continuous. For any matrix $\rho$, by $|\rho|$ we mean the positive square root of $\rho^{\dagger} \rho$. For two positive semidefinite matrices $\rho$ and $\sigma$, we define the trace distance as $\operatorname{tr}|\rho-\sigma|$. Now we are ready to state Fannes' inequality.

Theorem 9.2.6 (Fannes' inequality) Suppose $\rho$ and $\sigma$ are density matrices such that the trace distance between them satisfies $\operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma|<\frac{1}{e}$. Then $|S(\rho)-S(\sigma)| \leq \operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma| \log d+\eta(\operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma|)$, where $d$ is the dimension of the Hilbert space, and $\eta(x)=-x \log x$.

Proof Let $r_{1} \geq \cdots \geq r_{d}$ and $s_{1} \geq \cdots \geq s_{d}$ be the eigenvalues of $\rho$ and $\sigma$ respectively. By the spectral decomposition we can write $\rho-\sigma=Q-R$, where $Q$ and $R$ are positive operators with orthogonal support, so $\operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma|=\operatorname{Tr}(R)+\operatorname{Tr}(Q)$. Defining $V=R+\rho=$ $Q+\sigma$, we get $\operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma|=\operatorname{Tr}(R)+\operatorname{Tr}(Q)=\operatorname{Tr}(2 V)-\operatorname{Tr}(\rho)-\operatorname{Tr}(\sigma)$. Let $t_{1} \geq \cdots \geq t_{d}$ be the eigenvalues of $V$. By the variational principle for the $i^{t h}$ eigenvalue it follows that $t_{i} \geq \max \left(r_{i}, s_{i}\right)$. Hence $2 t_{i} \geq r_{i}+s_{i}+\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right|$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma| \geq \sum_{i}\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right| \tag{9.2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

When $|r-s| \leq \frac{1}{e}$, from mean value theorem it follows that $|\eta(r)-\eta(s)| \leq$ $\eta(|r-s|)$. Since $\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right| \leq \frac{1}{e}$ for all $i$, it follows that

$$
|S(\rho)-S(\sigma)|=\left|\sum_{i}\left(\eta\left(r_{i}\right)-\eta\left(s_{i}\right)\right)\right| \leq \sum_{i} \eta\left(\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right|\right)
$$

Setting $\Delta=\sum_{i}\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right|$ and observing that

$$
\eta\left(\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right|\right)=\Delta \eta\left(\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right| / \Delta\right)-\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right| \log (\Delta)
$$

we obtain

$$
|S(\rho)-S(\sigma)| \leq \Delta \sum \eta\left(\left|r_{i}-s_{i}\right| / \Delta\right)+\eta(\Delta) \leq \Delta \log d+\eta(\Delta)
$$

By (9.2.7) and monotonicity of $\eta(\cdot)$ on the interval $[0,1 / e]$, we get

$$
|S(\rho)-S(\sigma)| \leq \operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma| \log d+\eta(\operatorname{Tr}|\rho-\sigma|)
$$

Property 7) For any two quantum states $\rho, \sigma$ we define the relative entropy $S(\rho \| \sigma)$ of $\rho$ with respect to $\sigma$ by

$$
S(\rho \| \sigma)= \begin{cases}\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \rho-\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \sigma & \text { if supp } \rho \subset \operatorname{supp} \sigma  \tag{9.2.8}\\ \infty & \text { otherwise }\end{cases}
$$

Theorem 9.2.9 (Klein's inequality) $S(\rho \| \sigma) \geq 0$, where equality holds if and only if $\rho=\sigma$.

Proof Let the eigen decompositions of the states $\rho$ and $\sigma$ be given by $\rho=\sum_{i} p_{i}|i\rangle\langle i|, \sigma=\sum_{j} q_{j}|j\rangle\langle j|$. Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(\rho \| \sigma) & =\sum p_{i} \log p_{i}-\sum\langle i| \rho \log \sigma|i\rangle \\
& =\sum p_{i} \log p_{i}-\sum_{i, j} p_{i}|\langle i \mid j\rangle|^{2} \log q_{j}
\end{aligned}
$$

We may assume $S(\rho \| \sigma)$ to be finite. Since $-\log x$ is a convex function in the interval $[0,1]$ and $\sum_{j}|\langle i \mid j\rangle|^{2}=1$, we have

$$
-\sum_{j}|\langle i \mid j\rangle|^{2} \log q_{j} \geq-\log \sum_{j}|\langle i \mid j\rangle|^{2} q_{j}
$$

Putting $r_{i}=\sum_{j}|\langle i \mid j\rangle|^{2} q_{j}$ and observing that $\sum_{i} r_{i}=1$, we have

$$
S(\rho \| \sigma) \geq-\sum_{i} p_{i} \log \frac{r_{i}}{p_{i}} \geq 0
$$

Property 8) Let $\rho^{A B}$ be a state in $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ with marginal states $\rho^{A}$ and $\rho^{B}$. We denote by $S(A), S(B)$ and $S(A B)$ the von Neumann entropy of $\rho^{A}, \rho^{B}$ and $\rho^{A B}$ respectively. The quantum mutual information of the systems $A$ and $B$ is defined as $S(A: B)=S(A)+S(B)-S(A B)$.

Theorem 9.2.10 $S(A: B) \geq 0$.
Proof Observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(A) & =-\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{A} \log \rho^{A} \\
& =-\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{A B} \log \left(\rho^{A} \otimes I_{B}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Substituting in the expression for $S(A: B)$ we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(A: B) & =-\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{A B}\left(\log \rho^{A} \otimes I_{B}+\log I_{A} \otimes \rho^{B}\right)+\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{A B} \log \rho^{A B} \\
& =S\left(\rho^{A B} \| \rho^{A} \otimes \rho^{B}\right) \\
& \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $\rho^{A B}$ be a state in $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ with marginal states $\rho^{A}$ and $\rho^{B}$. The conditional entropy of the state $\rho^{A}$ given the state $\rho^{B}$ is defined as $S(A \mid B)=S(A B)-S(B)$. Note that the state $\rho^{A B}$ may be a pure state and the state $\rho^{B}$ an impure state. So $S(A \mid B)$ can be less than zero.

Property 9) Let $A$ be a quantum system with Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. By a projective measurement we mean a family of projection operators $P_{1}, P_{2}, \ldots, P_{n}$ in $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ satisfying $\sum_{i=1}^{n} P_{i}=I$. When such a measurement is made in a state $\rho$ the outcome of the measurement is $j$ with probability $\operatorname{Tr} \rho P_{j}$. According to collapse postulate 1.3 if the outcome is $j$ the state collapses to $\frac{P_{j} \rho P_{j}}{\operatorname{Tr} \rho P_{j}}$. Thus the post measurement state, ignoring the individual outcome, is

$$
\sum_{j}\left(\operatorname{Tr} \rho P_{j}\right) \frac{P_{j} \rho P_{j}}{\operatorname{Tr} \rho P_{j}}=\sum_{j} P_{j} \rho P_{j}
$$

Theorem 9.2.11 Let $\rho$ be the state of a quantum system and $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{n}$ be a projective measurement and let $\rho^{\prime}=\sum_{j} P_{j} \rho P_{j}$. Then $S\left(\rho^{\prime}\right) \geq S(\rho)$ and equality holds if and only if $\rho^{\prime}=\rho$.

## Proof

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \leq S\left(\rho \| \rho^{\prime}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \rho-\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \rho^{\prime} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \rho-\operatorname{Tr}\left(\sum_{i} P_{i} \rho \log \rho^{\prime}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \rho-\operatorname{Tr} \sum_{j} P_{j} \rho\left(\log \rho^{\prime}\right) P_{j} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \rho-\operatorname{Tr} \sum_{j} P_{j} \rho P_{j}\left(\log \rho^{\prime}\right) \\
& =S\left(\rho^{\prime}\right)-S(\rho) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By a generalized measurement we mean a set of operators $L_{1}, \ldots, L_{n}$ satisfying $\sum_{i=1}^{n} L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}=I$. If $\rho$ is a state in which such a generalized measurement is made, the probability of the outcome $i$ is $\operatorname{Tr} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}$ and the post measurement state is $\frac{L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger}}{\operatorname{Tr} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}}$. Thus the post measurement state, ignoring the individual outcome, is

$$
\sum\left(\operatorname{Tr} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}\right) \frac{L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger}}{\operatorname{Tr} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}}=\sum_{i} L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger}
$$

Remark 9.2.12 A generalized measurement may decrease the entropy.
Example 9.2.13 Let $L_{1}=|0\rangle\langle 0|$ and $L_{2}=|0\rangle\langle 1|$. Note that $L_{1}^{\dagger} L_{1}+$ $L_{2}^{\dagger} L_{2}=I$. Let $\rho=p|0\rangle\langle 0|+(1-p)|1\rangle\langle 1|$. Then

$$
S(\rho)=-p \log p-(1-p) \log (1-p)
$$

Let $\rho$ be measured using the measurement operators $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$. The resulting state is $\rho^{\prime}=L_{1} \rho L_{1}^{\dagger}+L_{2} \rho L_{2}^{\dagger}=|0\rangle\langle 0|$. This implies $S\left(\rho^{\prime}\right)=0$.

## Property 10)

Theorem 9.2.14 Let $\rho^{A B}$ be a state in $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ with marginal states $\rho^{A}$ and $\rho^{B}$. Then the following inequalities hold.

1) $S(A B) \leq S(A)+S(B)$,
2) $S(A B) \geq|S(A)-S(B)|$.

The first inequality is known as the sub-additivity inequality for the von Neumann entropy. The second is known as the triangle inequality or the Araki-Lieb inequality.

Proof The first inequality follows immediately from Klein's inequality (Theorem 9.2.9), $S(\rho) \leq-\operatorname{Tr} \rho \log \sigma$. Let $\rho=\rho^{A B}$ and $\sigma=\rho^{A} \otimes \rho^{B}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\operatorname{Tr}(\rho \log \sigma) & =-\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho^{A B}\left(\log \rho^{A}+\log \rho^{B}\right)\right) \\
& =-\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho^{A} \log \rho^{A}\right)-\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho^{B} \log \rho^{B}\right) \\
& =S(A)+S(B)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore we have $S(A B) \leq S(A)+S(B)$. From Klein's theorem it follows that equality holds if and only if $\rho^{A B}=\rho^{A} \otimes \rho^{B}$.

To prove the triangle inequality, we introduce a reference system $R$ such that $\rho^{A B R}$ is a pure state in $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{R}$. Then by sub-additivity we have $S(R)+S(A) \geq S(A R)$. Since $\rho^{A B R}$ is a pure state we have $S(A R)=S(B)$ and $S(R)=S(A B)$. Substituting we get $S(A B) \geq$ $S(B)-S(A)$. By symmetry we get the second inequality.

Exercise 9.2.15 Let $\rho^{A B}=\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}|i\rangle\langle i|$ be the spectral decomposition for $\rho^{A B}$. Then, show that $S(A B)=S(B)-S(A)$ if and only if the operators $\rho_{i}^{A}=\operatorname{Tr}_{B}(|i\rangle\langle i|)$ have a common eigen basis, and the operators $\rho_{i}^{B}=\operatorname{Tr}_{A}(|i\rangle\langle i|)$ have orthogonal support.

Property 11) $S(\rho)$ is concave in $\rho$.

Theorem 9.2.16 Let $\rho_{1}, \rho_{2}, \ldots, \rho_{n}$ be states and let $\boldsymbol{p}=\left(p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$ be a probability distribution. Then

$$
S\left(\sum_{i} p_{i} \rho_{i}\right) \geq \sum_{i} p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)
$$

Proof Let $\rho_{i}$ 's be the states in $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Consider an auxiliary Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{B}$, whose state space has an orthonormal basis $|i\rangle$ corresponding to the index $i$ of the density operators $\rho_{i}$. Let a joint state on $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ be defined by

$$
\rho^{A B}=\sum_{i} p_{i} \rho_{i} \otimes|i\rangle\langle i| .
$$

Note that $S(A B)=H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)$, by the joint entropy theorem (Corollary 9.2.5).

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho^{A} & =\sum p_{i} \rho_{i} \Rightarrow S\left(\rho^{A}\right)=S\left(\sum p_{i} \rho_{i}\right) \\
\rho^{B} & =\sum p_{i}|i\rangle\langle i| \Rightarrow S\left(\rho^{B}\right)=H(\boldsymbol{p})
\end{aligned}
$$

By subadditivity we have, $S\left(\rho^{A}\right)+S\left(\rho^{B}\right) \geq S\left(\rho^{A B}\right)$. Substituting we get $S\left(\sum p_{i} \rho_{i}\right)+H(\boldsymbol{p}) \geq H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)$.

## Property 12)

Theorem 9.2.17 $\sum p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right) \leq S\left(\sum p_{i} \rho_{i}\right) \leq H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)$.

Proof First let us consider the case when $\rho_{i}=\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{i}\right|$ for all $i$. Let $\rho_{i}$ 's be the states in $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and let $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ be an auxiliary Hilbert space with an orthonormal basis $|i\rangle$ corresponding to the index $i$ of the probabilities $p_{i}$. Let $\rho^{A B}=|A B\rangle\langle A B|$ where $|A B\rangle=\sum \sqrt{p_{i}}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle|i\rangle$. In other words $\rho^{A B}=\sum_{i, j} \sqrt{p_{i} p_{j}}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{j}\right| \otimes|i\rangle\langle j|$. Since $\rho^{A B}$ is a pure state we have $S(A)=S(B)=S\left(\sum_{i} p_{i}\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle\psi_{i}\right|\right)$. After performing measurement on the state $\rho^{B}$ in the $|i\rangle$ basis, the state of the system will be $\rho^{B^{\prime}}=\sum_{i} p_{i}|i\rangle\langle i|$. But, projective measurements never decrease entropy and using the fact $S\left(\rho_{i}\right)=0$ we get $S(A) \leq H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum_{i} p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)$. Note that the equality holds if and only if $\rho^{B}=\rho^{B^{\prime}}$ and this occurs if and only if $\left|\psi_{i}\right\rangle^{\prime} s$ are orthogonal. Now we can prove the mixed state case.

Let $\rho_{i}=\sum_{i} p_{i j}\left|e_{j}^{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{j}^{i}\right|$ be an orthonormal decomposition for the state $\rho_{i}$. Let $\rho=\sum_{i, j} p_{i} p_{i j}\left|e_{j}^{i}\right\rangle\left\langle e_{j}^{i}\right|$. Applying the result for the pure state case and observing that $\sum_{j} p_{i j}=1$ for all $i$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(\rho) & \leq-\sum_{i, j} p_{i} p_{i j} \log \left(p_{i} p_{i j}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i} p_{i} \log p_{i}-\sum_{i} p_{i} \sum_{j} p_{i j} \log p_{i j} \\
& =H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum_{i} p_{i} S\left(\rho_{i}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The sub-additivity and the triangle inequality for two quantum systems can be extended to three systems. This gives rise to a very important and useful result, known as the strong sub-additivity. The proof given here depends on a deep mathematical result known as Lieb's theorem.

Let $A, B$ be bounded operator variables on a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Suppose the pair $(A, B)$ varies in a convex set $\mathcal{C}$. A map $f: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is said to be jointly convex if
$f\left(\lambda A_{1}+(1-\lambda) A_{2}, \lambda B_{1}+(1-\lambda) B_{2}\right) \leq \lambda f\left(A_{1}, B_{1}\right)+(1-\lambda) f\left(A_{2}, B_{2}\right)$.
for all $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1,\left(A_{i}, B_{i}\right) \in \mathcal{C}, i=1,2$.
Now we are ready to state the next property.

## Property 13)

Theorem 9.2.18 Relative entropy is jointly convex in its arguments.
Let $\mathcal{H}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{2}$ be two finite dimensional Hilbert spaces. Let $\alpha$ be a map from $\mathcal{B}\left(\mathcal{H}_{1}\right)$ to $\mathcal{B}\left(\mathcal{H}_{2}\right)$ which satisfies $\alpha\left(X^{\dagger} X\right) \geq \alpha(X)^{\dagger} \alpha(X)$. In our case $\alpha$ will be a star homomorphism. Let $T_{i}, S_{i}, i \in\{1,2\}$ be positive operators in $\mathcal{H}_{i}, i=1,2$. The index $i$ corresponds to the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{i}$. To prove Theorem 9.2.18 we need the following lemma. This is also known as Lieb's inequality.

Lemma 9.2.19 If $\operatorname{Tr} X T_{1} \geq \operatorname{Tr} \alpha(X) T_{2}$ and $\operatorname{Tr} X S_{1} \geq \operatorname{Tr} \alpha(X) S_{2}$ and $T_{i}, i=1,2$ are invertible then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Tr} \alpha\left(X^{\dagger}\right) S_{2}^{t} \alpha(X) T_{2}^{1-t} \leq \operatorname{Tr} X^{\dagger} S_{1}^{t} X T_{1}^{1-t} \tag{9.2.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Observe that (9.2.20) is true when the parameter $t$ is equal to 1 or 0 . We need to show that the conclusion of (9.2.20) holds even when $t$ is a real number in the range $(0,1)$. So Lieb's inequality is an interpolation inequality. To prove Lieb's inequality we need the following results.

Lemma 9.2.21 The following equation is true.

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{t}=\frac{1}{\beta(t, 1-t)} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left[\lambda^{t-1}-\lambda^{t}(\lambda+x)^{-1}\right] d \lambda \tag{9.2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof We first perform the substitution $1+\frac{\lambda}{x}=\frac{1}{u}$. Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{\beta(t, 1-t)} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left[\lambda^{t-1}-\lambda^{t}(\lambda+x)^{-1}\right] d \lambda \\
& =\frac{1}{\beta(t, 1-t)} \int_{1}^{0}\left[x^{t-1}\left(\frac{1-u}{u}\right)^{t-1}-x^{t}\left(\frac{1-u}{u}\right)^{t}\left(\frac{u}{x}\right)\right]\left(-\frac{x}{u^{2}}\right) d u \\
& =\frac{x^{t}}{\beta(t, 1-t)} \int_{0}^{1}(1-u)^{t-1} u^{-t} d u \\
& =x^{t}
\end{aligned}
$$

Lemma 9.2.23 Let $0<t<1$ and let $A, B$ be two positive operators such that $A \leq B$. Then $A^{t} \leq B^{t}$.

## Proof

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \leq B & \Rightarrow(\lambda+A)^{-1} \geq(\lambda+B)^{-1} \\
& \Rightarrow \lambda^{t}(\lambda+A)^{-1} \geq \lambda^{t}(\lambda+B)^{-1} \\
& \Rightarrow \lambda^{t-1}-\lambda^{t}(\lambda+A)^{-1} \leq \lambda^{t-1}-\lambda^{t}(\lambda+B)^{-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus by spectral theorem and Lemma 9.2 .21 we have $A^{t} \leq B^{t}$.

Lemma 9.2.24 Let $A=\left[\begin{array}{ll}A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22}\end{array}\right]$ be a strictly positive definite matrix where $A_{11}$ and $A_{22}$ are square matrices. Then $A_{11}$ and $A_{22}$ are also strictly positive definite and

$$
\left(\left[\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}
\end{array}\right]^{-1}\right)_{11}>A_{11}^{-1}
$$

Proof Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}
\end{array}\right]^{-1}=} \\
& {\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\left(A_{11}-A_{12} A_{22}^{-1} A_{21}\right)^{-1} & -\left(A_{11}-A_{12} A_{22}^{-1} A_{21}\right)^{-1} A_{12} A_{22}^{-1} \\
-\left(A_{22}-A_{21} A_{11}^{-1} A_{12}\right)^{-1} A_{21} A_{11}^{-1} & \left(A_{22}-A_{21} A_{11}^{-1} A_{12}\right)^{-1}
\end{array}\right]}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $\left(A^{-1}\right)_{11}=\left(A_{11}-A_{12} A_{22}^{-1} A_{21}\right)^{-1}$. Since $A_{12} A_{22}^{-1} A_{21}$ is a positive operator we have $\left(A^{-1}\right)_{11} \geq A_{11}^{-1}$.

Lemma 9.2.25 Let $X$ be a positive operator in a finite dimensional Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{0}$ and let $V$ be a contraction map. Then $\left(V^{\dagger} X V\right)^{t} \geq$ $V^{\dagger} X^{t} V$.

Proof Observe that the lemma is true when $V$ is unitary. Let

$$
U=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
V & \sqrt{1-V V^{\dagger}} \\
-\sqrt{1-V^{\dagger} V} & V^{\dagger}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Note that, since $V$ is a contraction map, $\sqrt{1-V V^{\dagger}}$ and $\sqrt{1-V^{\dagger} V}$ are well defined and $U$ is unitary.

Let $P$ be the map $P: \mathcal{H}_{0} \oplus \mathcal{H}_{0} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_{0}$ which is projection on the first co-ordinate. Then $V=\left.P U P\right|_{\mathcal{H}_{0}}$. By Lemma 9.2 .24 we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\lambda I_{\mathcal{H}_{0}}+V^{\dagger} X V\right)^{-1} & =\left(\lambda I_{\mathcal{H}_{0}}+\left.P U^{\dagger} P X P U P\right|_{\mathcal{H}_{0}}\right)^{-1} \\
& \leq\left. P\left(\lambda I+U^{\dagger} P X P U\right)^{-1} P\right|_{\mathcal{H}_{0}} \\
& =\left.P U^{\dagger}\left(\lambda^{-1} P^{\perp}+P(\lambda+X)^{-1} P\right) U P\right|_{\mathcal{H}_{0}} \\
& =\left.\lambda^{-1} P U^{\dagger}(I-P) U P\right|_{\mathcal{H}_{0}}+V^{\dagger}(\lambda+X)^{-1} V \\
& =\lambda^{-1}\left(I-V^{\dagger} V\right)+V^{\dagger}(\lambda+X)^{-1} V
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{1}{\beta(1,1-t)} \int_{0}^{\infty} \lambda^{t-1}-\lambda^{t}\left(\lambda I+V^{\dagger} X V\right)^{-1} d \lambda \\
& \quad \geq \frac{1}{\beta(1,1-t)} \int_{0}^{\infty} \lambda^{t-1}-\lambda^{t}\left(\lambda^{-1}\left(I-V^{\dagger} V\right)+V^{\dagger}(\lambda+X)^{-1} V\right) d \lambda
\end{aligned}
$$

By applying Lemma 9.2 .21 we get $\left(V^{\dagger} X V\right)^{t} \geq V^{\dagger} X^{t} V$. This completes the proof.

Remark 9.2.26 Lemma 9.2.25 holds even when the contraction $V$ is from one Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{1}$ to another Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{2}$ and $X$ is a positive operator in $\mathcal{H}_{2}$. In this case the operator $U$ of the proof is from $\mathcal{H}_{1} \oplus \mathcal{H}_{2}$ to $\mathcal{H}_{2} \oplus \mathcal{H}_{1}$.

We look upon $\mathcal{B}\left(\mathcal{H}_{1}\right)$ and $\mathcal{B}\left(\mathcal{H}_{2}\right)$ as Hilbert spaces with the scalar product between two operators defined as $\langle X, Y\rangle=\operatorname{Tr} X^{\dagger} Y$. Define $V: \mathcal{B}\left(\mathcal{H}_{1}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}\left(\mathcal{H}_{2}\right)$ by $V: X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}=\alpha(X) T_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

Lemma 9.2.27 $V$ is a contraction map.

## Proof

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\alpha(X) T_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|^{2} & =\operatorname{Tr} T_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}} \alpha(X)^{\dagger} \alpha(X) T_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
& \leq \operatorname{Tr} \alpha\left(X^{\dagger} X\right) T_{2} \leq \operatorname{Tr} X^{\dagger} X T_{1} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}} X^{\dagger} X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
& =\left\|X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence the assertion is true.

Assume that $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$ are invertible and put $\Delta_{t} X=S_{1}^{t} X T_{1}^{-t}$ and $D_{t} Y=S_{2}^{t} Y T_{2}^{-t}$. Note that $\Delta_{t} \Delta_{s}=\Delta_{t+s}$ and $D_{t} D_{s}=D_{s+t}$ for $s, t \geq 0$. Furthermore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \Delta_{t}\left|X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle & =\operatorname{Tr} T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}} X^{\dagger} S_{1}^{t} X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}-t} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr}\left(X^{\dagger} S_{1}^{t} X\right) T_{1}^{1-t} \\
& \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly $\left\langle Y T_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| D_{t}\left|Y T_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle \geq 0$.
Hence $\Delta_{t}$ and $D_{t}$ are positive operator semigroups and in particular $\Delta_{t}=\Delta_{1}^{t}$ and $D_{t}=D_{1}^{t}$.

Lemma 9.2.28 $\left\langle X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \Delta_{1}\left|X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle \geq\left\langle X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| V^{\dagger} D_{1} V\left|X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle$.

## Proof

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \Delta_{1}\left|X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle & =\operatorname{Tr} T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}} X^{\dagger} S_{1} X T_{1}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} X^{\dagger} S_{1} X \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} X X^{\dagger} S_{1} \\
& \geq \operatorname{Tr} \alpha\left(X X^{\dagger}\right) S_{2} \\
& \geq \operatorname{Tr} \alpha(X) \alpha\left(X^{\dagger}\right) S_{2} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} T_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}} \alpha(X)^{\dagger} S_{2} \alpha(X) T_{2}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \\
& =\left\langle X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| V^{\dagger} D_{1} V\left|X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof of Lemma 9.2.19 From Lemmas 9.2.28, 9.2 .23 and 9.2.25 it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{1} & \geq V^{\dagger} D_{1} V \\
\Rightarrow \Delta_{t} & \geq\left(V^{\dagger} D_{1} V\right)^{t} \\
& \geq V^{\dagger} D_{1}^{t} V \quad \text { (true since } V \text { is a contraction map) } \\
& =V^{\dagger} D_{t} V .
\end{aligned}
$$

By expanding one can verify that the inequality

$$
\left\langle X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \Delta_{t}\left|X T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle \geq\left\langle\alpha(X) T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| D_{t}\left|\alpha(X) T_{1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\rangle
$$

is same as (9.2.20).

Proof of Theorem 9.2.18 Let $\mathcal{H}_{2}=\mathcal{H} \otimes \mathcal{H}$ and $\alpha(X)=\left[\begin{array}{cc}X & 0 \\ 0 & X\end{array}\right]$.
For $0<\lambda<1$ define $S_{1}, T_{1}, S_{2}$ and $T_{2}$ as follows: $S_{1}=\lambda \rho_{1}+(1-\lambda) \rho_{2}$, $T_{1}=\lambda \sigma_{1}+(1-\lambda) \sigma_{2}$,

$$
S_{2}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\lambda \rho_{1} & 0 \\
0 & (1-\lambda) \rho_{2}
\end{array}\right] \text { and } T_{2}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\lambda \sigma_{1} & 0 \\
0 & (1-\lambda) \sigma_{2}
\end{array}\right]
$$

where $\sigma_{1}$ and $\sigma_{2}$ are invertible. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Tr} \alpha(X) S_{2} & =\lambda \operatorname{Tr} \rho_{1} X+(1-\lambda) \operatorname{Tr} \rho_{2} X \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} S_{1} X \text { and } \\
\operatorname{Tr} \alpha(X) T_{2} & =\lambda \operatorname{Tr} \sigma_{1} X+(1-\lambda) \operatorname{Tr} \sigma_{2} X \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} T_{1} X
\end{aligned}
$$

Applying (9.2.20) with $X=I$ we get,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Tr} S_{2}^{t} T_{2}^{1-t} & \leq \operatorname{Tr} S_{1}^{t} T_{1}^{1-t} \\
\lim _{t \rightarrow 1} \frac{1-\operatorname{Tr} S_{2}^{t} T_{2}^{1-t}}{1-t} & \geq \lim _{t \rightarrow 1} \frac{1-\operatorname{Tr} S_{1}^{t} T_{1}^{1-t}}{1-t} \\
\left.\frac{d}{d t} \operatorname{Tr} S_{2}^{t} T_{2}^{1-t}\right|_{t=1} & \geq\left.\frac{d}{d t} \operatorname{Tr} S_{1}^{t} T_{1}^{1-t}\right|_{t=1}
\end{aligned}
$$

$\operatorname{Tr} S_{2} \log S_{2}-\operatorname{Tr} S_{2} \log T_{2} \geq \operatorname{Tr} S_{1} \log S_{1}-\operatorname{Tr} S_{1} \log T_{1}$.
That is,

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\operatorname{Tr} \lambda \rho_{1} \log \lambda \rho_{1}+(1-\lambda) \rho_{2} \log (1-\lambda) \rho_{2}-\lambda \rho_{1} \log \lambda \sigma_{1}-(1-\lambda) \rho_{2} \log (1-\lambda) \sigma_{2} \\
\geq S\left(\lambda \rho_{1}+(1-\lambda) \rho_{2} \| \lambda \sigma_{1}+(1-\lambda) \sigma_{2}\right)
\end{array}
$$

Thus $\lambda S\left(\rho_{1} \| \sigma_{1}\right)+(1-\lambda) S\left(\rho_{2} \| \sigma_{2}\right) \geq S\left(\lambda \rho_{1}+(1-\lambda) \rho_{2} \| \lambda \sigma_{1}+(1-\lambda) \sigma_{2}\right)$.

Property 14) Let $\rho^{A B}$ be a state in $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ with marginal states $\rho^{A}$ and $\rho^{B}$. Then the conditional entropy is concave in the state $\rho^{A B}$ of $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$.

Proof Let $d$ be the dimension of $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
S\left(\rho^{A B} \| \frac{I}{d} \otimes \rho^{B}\right) & =-S(A B)-\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho^{A B} \log \left(\frac{I}{d} \otimes \rho^{B}\right)\right) \\
& =-S(A B)-\operatorname{Tr}\left(\rho^{B} \log \rho^{B}\right)+\log d \\
& =-S(A \mid B)+\log d
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore concavity of $S(A \mid B)$ follows from convexity of the relative entropy.

## Property 15)

Theorem 9.2.29 (Strong subadditivity) For any three quantum systems, $A, B, C$, the following inequalities hold.

1) $S(A)+S(B) \leq S(A C)+S(B C)$.
2) $S(A B C)+S(B) \leq S(A B)+S(B C)$.

Proof To prove 1), we define a function $T\left(\rho^{A B C}\right)$ as follows:

$$
T\left(\rho^{A B C}\right)=S(A)+S(B)-S(A C)-S(B C)=-S(C \mid A)-S(C \mid B)
$$

Let $\rho^{A B C}=\sum_{i} p_{i}|i\rangle\langle i|$ be a spectral decomposition of $\rho^{A B C}$. From the concavity of the conditional entropy we see that $T\left(\rho^{A B C}\right)$ is a convex function of $\rho^{A B C}$. From the convexity of $T$ we have

$$
T\left(\rho^{A B C}\right) \leq \sum_{i} p_{i} T(|i\rangle\langle i|)
$$

But $T(|i\rangle\langle i|)=0$, as for a pure state $S(A C)=S(B)$ and $S(B C)=S(A)$. This implies $T\left(\rho^{A B C}\right) \leq 0$. Thus

$$
S(A)+S(B)-S(A C)-S(B C) \leq 0
$$

To prove 2) we introduce an auxiliary system $R$ purifying the system $A B C$ so that the joint state $\rho^{A B C R}$ is pure. Then using 1) we get

$$
S(R)+S(B) \leq S(R C)+S(B C)
$$

Since $A B C R$ is a pure state, we have, $S(R)=S(A B C)$ and $S(R C)=$ $S(A B)$. Substituting we get

$$
S(A B C)+S(B) \leq S(A B)+S(B C)
$$

Property 16) $S(A: B C) \geq S(A: B)$

Proof Using the second part of Property 15) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(A: B C)-S(A: B)= & S(A)+S(B C)-S(A B C)- \\
& {[S(A)+S(B)-S(A B)] } \\
= & S(B C)+S(A B)-S(A B C)-S(B) \\
\geq & 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $\mathcal{H}$ be the Hilbert space of a finite level quantum system. Recall that by a generalized measurement we mean a finite collection of operators $\left\{L_{1}, L_{2}, \ldots, L_{k}\right\}$ satisfying the relation $\sum_{i} L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}=I$. The set $\{1,2, \ldots, k\}$ is the collection of the possible outcomes of the measurement and if the state of the system at the time of measurement is $\rho$ then the probability $p_{i}$ of the outcome $i$ is given by $p_{i}=\operatorname{Tr} L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger}=\operatorname{Tr} \rho L_{i} L_{i}^{\dagger}$. If the outcome of the measurement is $i$, then the state of the system collapses to

$$
\rho_{i}=\frac{L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger}}{p_{i}}
$$

Thus the post measurement state is expected to be $\sum_{i} p_{i} \rho_{i}=\sum_{i} L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger}$. The map $\mathcal{E}$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}(\rho)=\sum_{i} L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger} \tag{9.2.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

on the set of states is called a quantum operation.

If we choose and fix an orthonormal basis in $\mathcal{H}$ and express the operators $L_{i}$ as matrices in this basis the condition that $\sum_{i} L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}=I$ can be interpreted as the property that the columns of the matrix

$$
\left[\begin{array}{c}
L_{1} \\
L_{2} \\
\vdots \\
L_{k}
\end{array}\right]
$$

constitute an orthonormal set of vectors. The length of the column vector is $k d$ where $d$ is the dimension of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. Extend this set of orthonormal vectors into an orthonormal basis for $\mathcal{H} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{k}$ and construct a unitary matrix of order $k d \times k d$ of the form

$$
U=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
L_{1} & \cdots \\
L_{2} & \cdots \\
\vdots & \vdots \\
L_{k} & \cdots
\end{array}\right]
$$

We can view this as a block matrix where each block is a $d \times d$ matrix. Define

$$
|0\rangle=\left[\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
0 \\
\vdots \\
0
\end{array}\right],
$$

so that for any state $\rho$ in $\mathcal{H}$ we have

$$
M=\rho \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\rho & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

as states in $\mathcal{H} \otimes \mathbb{C}^{k}$. Then

$$
U M U^{\dagger}=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
L_{1} \rho L_{1}^{\dagger} & L_{1} \rho L_{2}^{\dagger} & \cdots & L_{1} \rho L_{k}^{\dagger} \\
L_{2} \rho L_{1}^{\dagger} & L_{2} \rho L_{2}^{\dagger} & \cdots & L_{2} \rho L_{k}^{\dagger} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
L_{k} \rho L_{1}^{\dagger} & L_{k} \rho L_{2}^{\dagger} & \cdots & L_{k} \rho L_{k}^{\dagger}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Thus we have $\operatorname{Tr}_{\mathbb{C}^{k}} U(\rho \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|) U^{\dagger}=\sum_{i=1}^{k} L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger}=\mathcal{E}(\rho)$, where $\mathcal{E}(\rho)$ is defined as in (9.2.30). We summarize our discussion in the form of a lemma.

Lemma 9.2.31 Let $\mathcal{E}$ be a quantum operation on the states of a quantum system with Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$ determined by a generalized measurement $\left\{L_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq k\right\}$. Then there exists a pure state $|0\rangle$ of an auxiliary system with a Hilbert space $\mathcal{K}$ of dimension $k$ and a unitary operator $U$ on $\mathcal{H} \otimes \mathcal{K}$ satisfying the property $\mathcal{E}(\rho)=\operatorname{Tr}_{\mathcal{K}} U(\rho \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|) U^{\dagger}$ for every state $\rho$ in $\mathcal{H}$.

Property 17) Let $A B$ be a composite system with Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A B}=$ $\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and let $\mathcal{E}$ be a quantum operation on $B$ determined by the generalized measurement $\left\{L_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq k\right\}$ in $\mathcal{H}_{B}$. Then id $\otimes \mathcal{E}$ is a quantum operation on $A B$ determined by the generalized measurement $\left\{I_{A} \otimes L_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq k\right\}$. If $\rho^{A B}$ is any state in $\mathcal{H}_{A B}=\mathcal{H}_{A} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{B}$ and $\rho^{A^{\prime} B^{\prime}}=\operatorname{id} \otimes \mathcal{E}\left(\rho^{A B}\right)$, then, $S\left(A^{\prime}: B^{\prime}\right) \leq S(A: B)$.

Proof Following Lemma 9.2.31, we construct an auxiliary system $C$ with Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{C}$, a pure state $|0\rangle$ in $\mathcal{H}_{C}$ and a unitary operator $U$ on $\mathcal{H}_{B} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{C}$ so that

$$
\mathcal{E}\left(\rho^{B}\right)=\sum_{i} L_{i} \rho^{B} L_{i}^{\dagger}=\operatorname{Tr}_{C} U\left(\rho^{B} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|\right) U^{\dagger}
$$

Define $\tilde{U}=I_{A} \otimes U$. Let $\rho^{A B C}=\rho \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|$ and $\rho^{A^{\prime} B^{\prime} C^{\prime}}=\tilde{U} \rho^{A B C} \tilde{U}^{\dagger}$. Then for the marginal states we have $\rho^{A^{\prime}}=\rho^{A}, \quad \rho^{B^{\prime} C^{\prime}}=U \rho^{B C} U^{\dagger}$ and therefore $S\left(A^{\prime}\right)=S(A), S\left(B^{\prime} C^{\prime}\right)=S(B C)$. Thus using Property 16), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
S(A: B) & =S(A)+S(B)-S(A B) \\
& =S(A)+S(B C)-S(A B C) \\
& =S\left(A^{\prime}\right)+S\left(B^{\prime} C^{\prime}\right)-S\left(A^{\prime} B^{\prime} C^{\prime}\right) \\
& =S\left(A^{\prime}: B^{\prime} C^{\prime}\right) \\
& \geq S\left(A^{\prime}: B^{\prime}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

## Property 18) Holevo Bound

Consider an information source in which messages $x$ from a finite set $X$ come with probability $p(x)$. We denote this probability distribution by $\boldsymbol{p}$. The information obtained from such a source is given by

$$
H(X)=-\sum_{x \in X} p(x) \log _{2} p(x)
$$

Now suppose the message $x$ is encoded as a quantum state $\rho_{x}$ in a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. In order to decode the message make a generalized measurement $\left\{L_{y}, Y \in Y\right\}$ where $\sum_{y \in Y} L_{y}^{\dagger} L_{y}=I$. Given that the message $x$
came from the source, or equivalently, the state of the quantum system is the encoded state $\rho_{x}$ the probability for the measurement value $y$ is given by $\operatorname{Pr}(y \mid x)=\operatorname{Tr} L_{y} \rho_{x} L_{y}^{\dagger}$. Thus the joint probability $\operatorname{Pr}(x, y)$, that $x$ is the message and $y$ is the measurement outcome, is given by

$$
\operatorname{Pr}(x, y)=p(x) \operatorname{Pr}(y \mid x)=p(x) \operatorname{Tr} \rho_{x} L_{y}^{\dagger} L_{y}
$$

Thus we obtain a classical joint system $X Y$ described by this probability distribution in the space $X \times Y$. The information gained from the generalized measurement about the source $X$ is measured by the quantity $H(X)+H(Y)-H(X Y)($ see [9]). Our next result puts an upper bound on the information thus gained.

## Theorem 9.2.32 (Holevo, 1973)

$$
H(X)+H(Y)-H(X Y) \leq S\left(\sum_{x} p(x) \rho_{x}\right)-\sum_{x} p(x) S\left(\rho_{x}\right)
$$

Proof Let $\{|x\rangle, x \in X\},\{|y\rangle, y \in Y\}$ be orthonormal bases in Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}_{X}, \mathcal{H}_{Y}$ of dimension $\# X, \# Y$ respectively. Denote by $\mathcal{H}_{Z}$ the Hilbert space of the encoded states $\left\{\rho_{x}, x \in X\right\}$. Consider the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{X Z Y}=\mathcal{H}_{X} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{Z} \otimes \mathcal{H}_{Y}$. Choose and fix an element 0 in $Y$ and define the joint state

$$
\rho^{X Z Y}=\sum_{x} p(x)|x\rangle\langle x| \otimes \rho_{x} \otimes|0\rangle\langle 0|
$$

In the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{Z Y}$ consider the generalized measurement determined by $\left\{\sqrt{E_{y}} \otimes U_{y}, y \in Y\right\}$ where $E_{y}=L_{y}^{\dagger} L_{y}$ and $U_{y}$ is any unitary operator in $\mathcal{H}_{Y}$ satisfying $U_{y}|0\rangle=|y\rangle$. Such a measurement gives an operation $\mathcal{E}$ on the states of the system $Z Y$ and the operation id $\otimes \mathcal{E}$ satisfies

$$
(\operatorname{id} \otimes \mathcal{E})\left(\rho^{X Z Y}\right)=\sum_{x \in X, y \in Y} p(x)|x\rangle\langle x| \otimes \sqrt{E_{y}} \rho_{x} \sqrt{E_{y}} \otimes|y\rangle\langle y|=\rho^{X^{\prime} Z^{\prime} Y^{\prime}}
$$

say. By Property 17 ) we have $S(X: Z)=S(X: Z Y) \geq S\left(X^{\prime}: Z^{\prime} Y^{\prime}\right)$. By Property 16)

$$
\begin{equation*}
S(X: Z) \geq S\left(X^{\prime}: Y^{\prime}\right) \tag{9.2.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\rho^{X Z}=\sum p(x)|x\rangle\langle x| \otimes \rho_{x}$ we have from the joint entropy theorem $S(X Z)=H(\boldsymbol{p})+\sum p(x) S\left(\rho_{x}\right)$. Furthermore

$$
\begin{align*}
\rho^{X} & =\sum p(x)|x\rangle\langle x|, \quad S(X)=H(\boldsymbol{p})=H(X) \\
\rho^{Z} & =\sum p(x) \rho_{x}, \quad S(Z)=S\left(\rho^{Z}\right)  \tag{9.2.34}\\
S(X: Z) & =S\left(\sum p(x) \rho_{x}\right)-\sum p(x) S\left(\rho_{x}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

On the other hand

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho^{X^{\prime} Z^{\prime} Y^{\prime}} & =\sum_{x, y} p(x)|x\rangle\langle x| \otimes \sqrt{E_{y}} \rho_{x} \sqrt{E_{y}} \otimes|y\rangle\langle y| \\
\rho^{X^{\prime}} & =\sum_{x} p(x)|x\rangle\langle x| \\
\rho^{Y^{\prime}} & =\sum_{x, y} p(x) \operatorname{Tr} \rho_{x} E_{y}|y\rangle\langle y| \\
\rho^{X^{\prime} Y^{\prime}} & =\sum_{x, y} p(x) \operatorname{Tr} \rho_{x} E_{y}|x\rangle\langle x| \otimes|y\rangle\langle y| .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
S\left(X^{\prime}: Y^{\prime}\right)=H(X)+H(Y)-H(X Y) \tag{9.2.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining (9.2.33), (9.2.34) and (9.2.35) we get the required result.

## Property 19) Schumacher's theorem

Let $\boldsymbol{p}$ be a probability distribution on a finite set $X$. For $\epsilon>0$ define

$$
\nu(\boldsymbol{p}, \epsilon)=\min \{\# E \mid E \subset X, \operatorname{Pr}(E ; \boldsymbol{p}) \geq 1-\epsilon\}
$$

It is quite possible that $\# X$ is large in comparison with $\nu(\boldsymbol{p}, \epsilon)$. In other words, by omitting a set of probability at most $\epsilon$ we may have most of the statistical information packed in a set $E$ of size much smaller than $\# X$. In the context of information theory it is natural to consider the ratio $\frac{\log _{2} \nu(\boldsymbol{p}, \epsilon)}{\log _{2} \# X}$ as the information content of $\boldsymbol{p}$ upto a negligible set of probability at most $\epsilon$. If now we replace the probability space ( $X, \boldsymbol{p}$ ) by its $n$-fold cartesian product $\left(X^{n}, \boldsymbol{p}^{\otimes n}\right)(n$ i.i.d. copies of $(X, \boldsymbol{p}))$ and allow $n$ to increase to infinity then an application of the law of large numbers leads to the following result:

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \nu\left(\boldsymbol{p}^{\otimes n}, \epsilon\right)}{\log \# X^{n}}=\frac{H(\boldsymbol{p})}{\log X}
$$

Or equivalently,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \nu\left(\boldsymbol{p}^{\otimes n}, \epsilon\right)}{n}=H(\boldsymbol{p}) \quad \text { for all } \epsilon>0 \tag{9.2.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $H(\boldsymbol{p})$ is the Shannon entropy of $\boldsymbol{p}$. This is a special case of Macmillan's theorem in classical information theory. Our next result is a quantum analogue of (9.2.36), which also implies (9.2.36). Let $(\mathcal{H}, \rho)$ be a quantum probability space where $\mathcal{H}$ is a finite dimensional Hilbert space and $\rho$ is a state. For any projection operator $E$ on $\mathcal{H}$ denote by $\operatorname{dim} E$ the dimension of the range of $E$. For any $\epsilon>0$ define

$$
\nu(\rho, \epsilon)=\min \{\operatorname{dim} E \mid E \text { is a projection in } \mathcal{H}, \operatorname{Tr} \rho E \geq 1-\epsilon\}
$$

Theorem 9.2.37 (Schumacher) For any $\epsilon>0$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \nu\left(\rho^{\otimes n}, \epsilon\right)}{n}=S(\rho) \tag{9.2.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $S(\rho)$ is the von Neumann entropy of $\rho$.

Proof By the spectral theorem $\rho$ can be expressed as

$$
\rho=\sum_{x} p(x)|x\rangle\langle x|
$$

where $x$ varies in a finite set $X$ of labels, $\boldsymbol{p}=\{p(x), x \in X\}$ is a probability distribution with $p(x)>0$ for every $x$ and $\{|x\rangle, x \in X\}$ is an orthonormal set in $\mathcal{H}$. Then

$$
\rho^{\otimes n}=\sum_{\boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)} p\left(x_{1}\right) p\left(x_{2}\right) \ldots p\left(x_{n}\right)|\boldsymbol{x}\rangle\langle\boldsymbol{x}|
$$

where $x_{i}$ 's vary in $X$ and $|\boldsymbol{x}\rangle$ denotes the product vector $\left|x_{1}\right\rangle\left|x_{2}\right\rangle \ldots\left|x_{n}\right\rangle$. Write $p_{n}(\boldsymbol{x})=p\left(x_{1}\right) \ldots p\left(x_{n}\right)$ and observe that $\boldsymbol{p}^{\otimes n}=\left\{p_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}), \boldsymbol{x} \in X^{\otimes n}\right\}$ is the probability distribution of $n$ i.i.d. copies of $\boldsymbol{p}$. We have $S(\rho)=$ $-\sum_{x} p(x) \log p(x)=H(\boldsymbol{p})$. From the strong law of large numbers for i.i.d. random variables it follows that

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty}-\frac{1}{n} \log p\left(x_{1}\right) p\left(x_{2}\right) \ldots p\left(x_{n}\right)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty}-\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \log p\left(x_{i}\right)=S(\rho)
$$

in the sense of almost sure convergence in the probability space $\left(X^{\infty}, \boldsymbol{p}^{\otimes \infty}\right)$. This suggests that, in the search for a small set of high probability, we consider the set

$$
\begin{equation*}
T(n, \epsilon)=\left\{\boldsymbol{x}:\left|-\frac{1}{n} \log p\left(x_{1}\right) p\left(x_{2}\right) \ldots p\left(x_{n}\right)-S(\rho)\right| \leq \epsilon\right\} \tag{9.2.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Any element of $T(n, \epsilon)$ is called an $\epsilon$-typical sequence of length $n$. It is a consequence of the large deviation principle that there exist constants $A>0,0<c<1$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Pr}(T(n, \epsilon)) \geq 1-A c^{n} \tag{9.2.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

Pr denoting probability but according to the distribution $\boldsymbol{p}^{\otimes n}$. This says but for a set of sequences of total probability $<A c^{n}$ every sequence is $\epsilon$-typical. It follows from (9.2.39) that for any $\epsilon$-typical sequence $\boldsymbol{x}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
2^{-n(S(\rho)+\epsilon)} \leq p_{n}(\boldsymbol{x}) \leq 2^{-n(S(\rho)-\epsilon)} \tag{9.2.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define the projection

$$
\begin{equation*}
E(n, \epsilon)=\sum_{\boldsymbol{x} \in T(n, \epsilon)}|\boldsymbol{x}\rangle\langle\boldsymbol{x}| \tag{9.2.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

and note that $\operatorname{dim} E(n, \epsilon)=\# T(n, \epsilon)$. Summing over $\boldsymbol{x} \in T(n, \epsilon)$ in (9.2.41) we conclude that

$$
2^{-n(S(\rho)+\epsilon))} \operatorname{dim} E(n, \epsilon) \leq \operatorname{Pr}(T(n, \epsilon)) \leq 2^{-n(S(\rho)-\epsilon))} \operatorname{dim} E(n, \epsilon)
$$

and therefore by $(9.2 .40)$ and the fact that probabilities never exceed 1 , we get

$$
2^{n(S(\rho)-\epsilon))}\left(1-A c^{n}\right) \leq \operatorname{dim} E(n, \epsilon) \leq 2^{n(S(\rho)+\epsilon))}
$$

for all $\epsilon>0, n=1,2, \ldots$ In particular

$$
\frac{\log \operatorname{dim} E(n, \epsilon)}{n} \leq S(\rho)+\epsilon
$$

Fix $\epsilon$ and let $\delta>0$ be arbitrary. Choose $n_{0}$ so that $A c^{n_{0}}<\delta$. Note that $\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n} E(n, \epsilon)=\operatorname{Pr}(T(n, \epsilon)) \geq 1-\delta$ for $n \geq n_{0}$. By the definition of $\nu\left(\rho^{\otimes n}, \delta\right)$ we have

$$
\frac{\log \nu\left(\rho^{\otimes n}, \delta\right)}{n} \leq \frac{\log \operatorname{dim} E(n, \epsilon)}{n} \leq S(\rho)+\epsilon, \text { for } n \geq n_{0}
$$

Letting $n \rightarrow \infty$ we get

$$
\varlimsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \nu\left(\rho^{\otimes n}, \delta\right)}{n} \leq S(\rho)+\epsilon
$$

Since $\epsilon$ is arbitrary we get

$$
\varlimsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \nu\left(\rho^{\otimes n}, \delta\right)}{n} \leq S(\rho)
$$

Now we shall arrive at a contradiction by assuming that

$$
\underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log \nu\left(\rho^{\otimes n}, \delta\right)}{n}<S(\rho)
$$

Under such a hypothesis there would exist an $\eta>0$ such that

$$
\frac{\log \nu\left(\rho^{\otimes n}, \delta\right)}{n} \leq S(\rho)-\eta
$$

for infinitely many $n$, say $n=n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots$ where $n_{1}<n_{2}<\cdots$. In such a case there exists a projection $F_{n_{j}}$ in $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n_{j}}$ such that

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{dim} F_{n_{j}} & \leq 2^{\left.n_{j}(S(\rho)-\eta)\right)} \\
\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n_{j}} F_{n_{j}} & \geq 1-\delta \tag{9.2.43}
\end{align*}
$$

for $j=1,2, \ldots$. Choosing $\epsilon<\eta$ and fixing it we have

$$
\begin{align*}
1-\delta & \leq \operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n_{j}} F_{n_{j}} \\
& =\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n_{j}} E\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right) F_{n_{j}}+\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n_{j}}\left(I-E\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right)\right) F_{n_{j}} \tag{9.2.44}
\end{align*}
$$

From (9.2.40) and the fact that $\rho^{\otimes n}$ and $E(n, \epsilon)$ commute with each other we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n_{j}}\left(I-E\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right)\right) F_{n_{j}} & \leq \operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n_{j}}\left(I-E\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right)\right) \\
& =1-\operatorname{Pr}\left(T\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right)\right)  \tag{9.2.45}\\
& <A c^{n_{j}}
\end{align*}
$$

Furthermore from (9.2.41) we have

$$
\rho^{\otimes n_{j}} E\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right)=\sum_{\boldsymbol{x} \in T\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right)} p_{n_{j}}(\boldsymbol{x})|\boldsymbol{x}\rangle\langle\boldsymbol{x}| \leq 2^{\left.-n_{j}(S(\rho)-\epsilon)\right)} I
$$

Thus by (9.2.43) we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{Tr} \rho^{\otimes n_{j}} E\left(n_{j}, \epsilon\right) F_{n_{j}} & \leq 2^{\left.-n_{j}(S(\rho)-\epsilon)\right)} \operatorname{dim} F_{n_{j}} \\
& \leq 2^{\left.\left.-n_{j}(S(\rho)-\epsilon)\right)+n_{j}(S(\rho)-\eta)\right)}  \tag{9.2.46}\\
& =2^{-n_{j}(\eta-\epsilon)}
\end{align*}
$$

Now combining (9.2.44), (9.2.45) and (9.2.46) we get

$$
1-\delta \leq 2^{-n_{j}(\eta-\epsilon)}+A c^{n_{j}}
$$

where the right side tends to 0 as $j \rightarrow \infty$, a contradiction.

## Property 20) Feinstein's fundamental lemma

Consider a classical information channel $\mathcal{C}$ equipped with an input alphabet $A$, an output alphabet $B$ and a transition probability $\left\{p_{x}(V), x \in A, V \subset B\right\}$. We assume that both $A$ and $B$ are finite sets. If a letter $x \in A$ is transmitted through the channel $\mathcal{C}$ then any output $y \in B$ is possible and $p_{x}(V)$ denotes the probability that the output letter belongs to $V$ under the condition that $x$ is transmitted. For such a channel we define a code of size $N$ and error probability $\leq \epsilon$ to be a set $C=\left\{c_{1}, c_{2}, \ldots, c_{N}\right\} \subset A$ together with a family $\left\{V_{1}, V_{2}, \ldots, V_{N}\right\}$ of disjoint subsets of $B$ satisfying the condition $p_{c_{i}}\left(V_{i}\right) \geq 1-\epsilon$ for all $i=1,2, \ldots, N$. Let

$$
\nu(\mathrm{C}, \epsilon)=\max \left\{\begin{array}{l|l}
N & \begin{array}{l}
\text { there exists a code of size } N \text { and error proba- } \\
\text { bility } \leq \epsilon
\end{array}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

Our aim is to estimate $\nu(\mathcal{C}, \epsilon)$ in terms of information theoretic parameters concerning the conditional distributions $p_{x}(\cdot), x \in A$, denoted by $\boldsymbol{p}_{x}$. To this end consider an input probability distribution $p(x), x \in A$, denoted by $\boldsymbol{p}$ and define the joint input-output distribution $\boldsymbol{P}$ such that $\operatorname{Pr}(x, y ; \boldsymbol{P})=p(x) p_{x}(\{y\})$. From now onwards we write $\operatorname{Pr}(x, y)$ instead of $\operatorname{Pr}(x, y, \boldsymbol{P})$. Denote by $H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B)$ the mutual information between the input and the output according to the joint distribution $\boldsymbol{P}$. Put

$$
\begin{equation*}
C=\sup _{\boldsymbol{p}} H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B) \tag{9.2.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the supremum is taken over all input distributions $\boldsymbol{p}$. For a fixed input distribution $\boldsymbol{p}$, put

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{2}=\sum_{x \in A, y \in B} \operatorname{Pr}(x, y)\left\{\log \frac{\operatorname{Pr}(x, y)}{p(x) q(y)}-H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B)\right\}^{2} \tag{9.2.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{q}$ is the $B$-marginal distribution determined by $\boldsymbol{P}$. Thus $q(y)=$ $\sum_{x} \operatorname{Pr}(x, y)$. With these notations we have the following lemma.

Lemma 9.2.49 Let $\eta>0, \delta>0$ be positive constants and let $\boldsymbol{p}$ be any input distribution on $A$. Then there exists a code of size $N$ and error probability $\leq \eta$ where

$$
N \geq\left(\eta-\frac{\sigma_{p}^{2}}{\delta^{2}}\right) 2^{H_{p}(A: B)-\delta}
$$

Proof Put $R=H_{p}(A: B)$. Define the random variable $\xi$ on the probability space $(A \times B, \boldsymbol{P})$ by

$$
\xi(x, y)=\log \frac{\operatorname{Pr}(x, y)}{p(x) q(y)} .
$$

Then $\xi$ has expectation $R$ and variance $\sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{2}$ defined by (9.2.48). Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
V=\left\{(x, y):\left|\log \frac{\operatorname{Pr}(x, y)}{p(x) q(y)}-R\right| \leq \delta\right\} . \tag{9.2.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then by Chebyshev's inequality for the random variable $\xi$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Pr}(V ; \boldsymbol{P}) \geq 1-\frac{\sigma_{p}^{2}}{\delta^{2}} \tag{9.2.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define $V_{x}=\{y \mid(x, y) \in V\}$. Then (9.2.51) can be expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{x \in A} p(x) p_{x}\left(V_{x}\right) \geq 1-\frac{\sigma_{p}^{2}}{\delta^{2}} \tag{9.2.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

This shows that for a $p$-large set of $x$ 's the conditional probabilities $p_{x}\left(V_{x}\right)$ must be large. When $(x, y) \in V$ we have from (9.2.50)

$$
R-\delta \leq \log \frac{\operatorname{Pr}(x, y)}{p(x) q(y)} \leq R+\delta
$$

or equivalently

$$
q(y) 2^{R-\delta} \leq p_{x}(y) \leq q(y) 2^{R+\delta} .
$$

Summing over $y \in V_{x}$ we get

$$
q\left(V_{x}\right) 2^{R-\delta} \leq p_{x}\left(V_{x}\right) \leq q\left(V_{x}\right) 2^{R+\delta} .
$$

In particular,

$$
\begin{equation*}
q\left(V_{x}\right) \leq p_{x}\left(V_{x}\right) 2^{-(R-\delta)} \leq 2^{-(R-\delta)} . \tag{9.2.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

In other words $V_{x}$ 's are $q$-small. Now choose $x_{1}$ in $A$ such that $p_{x_{1}}\left(V_{x_{1}}\right) \geq$ $1-\eta$ and set $V_{1}=V_{x_{1}}$. Then choose $x_{2}$ such that $p_{x_{2}}\left(V_{x_{2}} \cap V_{1}^{\prime}\right)>1-\eta$, where the prime' denotes complement in $B$. Put $V_{2}=V_{x_{2}} \cap V_{1}^{\prime}$. Continue this procedure till we have an $x_{N}$ such that

$$
p_{x_{N}}\left(V_{x_{N}} \cap V_{1}^{\prime} \cap \cdots \cap V_{N-1}^{\prime}\right)>1-\eta,
$$

and for any $x \notin\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{N}\right\}$,

$$
p_{x}\left(V_{x} \cap\left(\cup_{j=1}^{N} V_{j}\right)^{\prime}\right) \leq 1-\eta
$$

where $V_{N}=V_{x_{N}} \cap V_{1}^{\prime} \cap \cdots \cap V_{N-1}^{\prime}$. By choice the sets $V_{1}, V_{2}, \ldots, V_{N}$ are disjoint, $\cup_{i=1}^{N} V_{i}=\cup_{i=1}^{N} V_{x_{i}}$ and therefore

$$
\begin{equation*}
p_{x}\left(V_{x} \cap\left(\cup_{j=1}^{N} V_{j}\right)^{\prime}\right) \leq 1-\eta \quad \text { for all } x \in A . \tag{9.2.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

From (9.2.52), (9.2.53) and (9.2.54) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
1-\frac{\sigma_{p}^{2}}{\delta^{2}} & \leq \sum_{x} p(x) p_{x}\left(V_{x}\right) \\
& =\sum_{x} p(x) p_{x}\left(V_{x} \cap\left(\cup_{i=1}^{N} V_{i}\right)^{\prime}\right)+\sum_{x} p(x) p_{x}\left(V_{x} \cap\left(\cup_{i=1}^{N} V_{i}\right)\right) \\
& \leq 1-\eta+\sum_{x} p(x) p_{x}\left(V_{x} \cap\left(\cup_{i=1}^{N} V_{i}\right)\right) \\
& =1-\eta+q\left(\cup_{i=1}^{N} V_{i}\right) \\
& \leq 1-\eta+\sum_{i=1}^{N} q\left(V_{i}\right) \\
& \leq 1-\eta+\sum_{i=1}^{N} q\left(V_{x_{i}}\right) \\
& \leq 1-\eta+N 2^{-(R-\delta)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus $N \geq\left(\eta-\frac{\sigma_{p}^{2}}{\delta^{2}}\right) 2^{(R-\delta)}$.

Now we consider the $n$-fold product $\mathcal{C}^{(n)}$ of the channel $\mathcal{C}$ with input alphabet $A^{n}$, output alphabet $B^{n}$ and transition probability $\left\{p_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{(n)}(V), \boldsymbol{x} \in\right.$ $\left.A^{n}, V \subset B^{n}\right\}$ where for $\boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right), \boldsymbol{y}=\left(y_{1}, y_{2}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$,

$$
p_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{(n)}(\{\boldsymbol{y}\})=\prod_{i=1}^{n} p_{x_{i}}\left(\left\{y_{i}\right\}\right) .
$$

We now choose and fix an input distribution $p$ on $A$ and define the product probability distribution $\boldsymbol{P}^{(n)}$ on $A^{n} \times B^{n}$ by

$$
P^{(n)}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y})=\prod_{i=1}^{n} p\left(x_{i}\right) p_{x_{i}}\left(\left\{y_{i}\right\}\right)
$$

Then the $A^{n}$ marginal of $\boldsymbol{P}^{(n)}$ is given by

$$
p^{(n)}(\boldsymbol{x})=\prod_{i=1}^{n} p\left(x_{i}\right)
$$

and $H_{\boldsymbol{p}^{(n)}}\left(A^{n}: B^{n}\right)=n H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B), \sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}^{(n)}}^{2}=n \sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{2}$ where $\sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{2}$ is given by (9.2.48). Choose $\eta>0, \delta=n \epsilon$ and apply the Lemma 9.2.49 to the product channel. Then it follows that there exists a code of size $N$ and error probability $\leq \eta$ with

$$
N \geq\left(\eta-\frac{n \sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{2}}{n^{2} \epsilon^{2}}\right) 2^{n\left(H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B)-\epsilon\right)}=\left(\eta-\frac{\sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{2}}{n \epsilon^{2}}\right) 2^{n\left(H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B)-\epsilon\right)}
$$

Thus

$$
\frac{1}{n} \log \nu\left(\mathrm{C}^{(n)}, \eta\right) \geq \frac{1}{n} \log \left(\eta-\frac{\sigma_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{2}}{n \epsilon^{2}}\right)+H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B)-\epsilon
$$

In other words

$$
\underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \nu\left(\mathrm{C}^{(n)}, \eta\right) \geq H_{\boldsymbol{p}}(A: B)-\epsilon
$$

Here the positive constant $\epsilon$ and the initial distribution $p$ on the input alphabet $A$ are arbitrary. Hence we conclude that

$$
\underline{\lim }_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \nu\left(\mathcal{C}^{(n)}, \eta\right) \geq C
$$

It has been shown by J. Wolfowitz ([16])that

$$
\varlimsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \nu\left(\mathcal{C}^{(n)}, \eta\right) \leq C
$$

The proof of this assertion is long and delicate and we refer the reader to [16]. We summarize our discussions in the form of a theorem.

Theorem 9.2.55 (Shannon-Wolfowitz) Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a channel with finite input and output alphabets $A$ and $B$ respectively and transition probability $\left\{p_{x}(V), x \in A, V \subset B\right\}$. Define the constant $C$ by (9.2.47). Then

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \log \nu\left(\mathrm{C}^{(n)}, \eta\right)=C \quad \text { for all } 0<\eta<1
$$

Remark 9.2.56 The constant $C$ deserves to be and is called the $c a$ pacity of the discrete memory less channel determined by the product of copies of $\mathcal{C}$.

A quantum information channel is characterized by an input Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{A}$, an output Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ and a quantum operation $\mathcal{E}$ which maps states on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ to states on $\mathcal{H}_{B}$. We assume that $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ are finite dimensional. The operation $\mathcal{E}$ has the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}(\rho)=\sum_{i=1}^{k} L_{i} \rho L_{i}^{\dagger} \tag{9.2.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $L_{1}, \ldots, L_{k}$ are operators from $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ to $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ obeying the condition $\sum_{i} L_{i}^{\dagger} L_{i}=I_{A}$. A message encoded as the state $\rho$ on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ is transmitted through the channel and received as a state $\mathcal{E}(\rho)$ in $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ and the aim is to recover $\rho$ as accurately as possible from $\mathcal{E}(\rho)$. Thus $\mathcal{E}$ plays the role of transition probability in the classical channel. The recovery is implemented by a recovery operation which maps states on $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ to states on $\mathcal{H}_{A}$. A quantum code $\mathcal{C}$ of error not exceeding $\epsilon$ can be defined as a subspace $\mathcal{C} \subset \mathcal{H}_{A}$ with the property that there exists a recovery operation $\mathcal{R}$ of the form

$$
\mathcal{R}\left(\rho^{\prime}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{\ell} M_{j} \rho^{\prime} M_{j}^{\dagger} \quad \text { for any state } \rho^{\prime} \text { on } \mathcal{H}_{B}
$$

where the following conditions hold:

1. $M_{1}, \ldots, M_{\ell}$ are operators from $\mathcal{H}_{A}$ to $\mathcal{H}_{B}$ satisfying $\sum_{j=1}^{\ell} M_{j}^{\dagger} M_{j}=$ $I_{B} ;$
2. for any $\psi \in \mathcal{C},\langle\psi| \mathcal{R} \circ \mathcal{E}(|\psi\rangle\langle\psi|)|\psi\rangle \geq 1-\epsilon$.

Now define

$$
\nu(\mathcal{E}, \epsilon)=\max \{\operatorname{dim} \mathcal{C} \mid \mathcal{C} \text { is a quantum code of error not exceeding } \epsilon\}
$$

We may call $\nu(\mathcal{E}, \epsilon)$ the maximal size possible for a quantum code of error not exceeding $\epsilon$. As in the case of classical channels one would like to estimate $\nu(\mathcal{E}, \epsilon)$.

If $n>1$ is any integer define the $n$-fold product $\mathcal{E}^{\otimes n}$ of the operation $\mathcal{E}$ by

$$
\mathcal{E}^{\otimes n}=\sum_{i_{1}, i_{2}, \ldots, i_{n}} L_{i_{1}} \otimes L_{i_{2}} \otimes \cdots \otimes L_{i_{n}} \rho L_{i_{1}}^{\dagger} \otimes L_{i_{2}}^{\dagger} \otimes \cdots \otimes L_{i_{n}}^{\dagger}
$$

for any state $\rho$ on $\mathcal{H}_{A}^{\otimes n}$, where the $L_{i}$ 's are as in (9.2.57). It is an interesting problem to analyze the asymptotic behavior of the sequence $\left\{\frac{1}{n} \log \nu\left(\mathcal{E}^{\otimes n}, \epsilon\right)\right\}$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

## Bibliography

[1] J. Aczel and Z. Daroczy, On Measures of Information and Their Characterizations, Academic Pub., New York, 1975.
[2] A. Aho, J. Hopcroft and J. Ullman, The Design and Analysis of Computer Algorithms, Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1974.
[3] M. Artin, Algebra, Prentice Hall of India Pvt. Ltd., 1996
[4] I. L. Chuang and M. A. Nielsen, Quantum Computation and Quantum Information, Cambridge University Press, 2000.
[5] T. H. Cormen, C. E. Leiserson and R. L. Rivest, Introduction to Algorithms, McGraw-Hill Higher Education, March 1, 1990.
[6] G. H. Hardy and E. M. Wright, Introduction to the Theory of Numbers, ELBS and Oxford University Press, 4th edition, 1959.
[7] W. C. Huffman and Vera Pless, Fundamentals of Error-correcting Codes, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2003.
[8] N. Jacobson, Basic Algebra I, II, Freeman, San Francisco, 1974, 1980.
[9] A. I. Khinchin, Mathematical Foundations of Information Theory, New York, 1957.
[10] D. E. Knuth, Seminumerical Algorithms, volume 2 of The Art of Computer Programming, 3rd edition, Addison-Wesley, 1997.
[11] A. N. Kolmogorov, Grundbegriffe der Wahrscheinlichkeitsrechnung, 1933 (Foundations of the Theory of Probability, Chelsea, New york, 1950).
[12] D. C. Kozen, The Design and Analysis of Algorithms, SpringerVerlag, 1992.
[13] F. J. Macwilliams and N. J. A. Sloane, Theory of Error-correcting Codes, North Holland, Amsterdam, 1978.
[14] J. von Neumann, Mathematical Foundations of Quantum Mechanics (translated from German), Princeton University Press, 1955. Original in, Collected Works, Vol 1, pp. 151-235, edited by A.H. Taub, Pergamon Press 1961.
[15] K. R. Parthasarathy, Lectures on Error-correcting Codes, Indian Statistical Institute, New Delhi.
[16] J. Wolfowitz, Coding Theorems of Information Theory, Springer Verlag, 3rd edition, 1978.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ Our proof is based on the proof of correctness of Miller's primality test in Kozen's book [12, page 206]. Nielsen and Chuang [4, Theorem A4.13, page 634] give a bound of $2^{-m}$. Their bound is not correct: for $N=21=3 \times 7$, we have $\left|\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}\right|=12$ and $|A|=6$. Then, $\frac{|A|}{\left|\mathbb{Z}_{N}^{*}\right|} \not \leq 2^{-2}$.

